浩瀚英语



用英语说中国

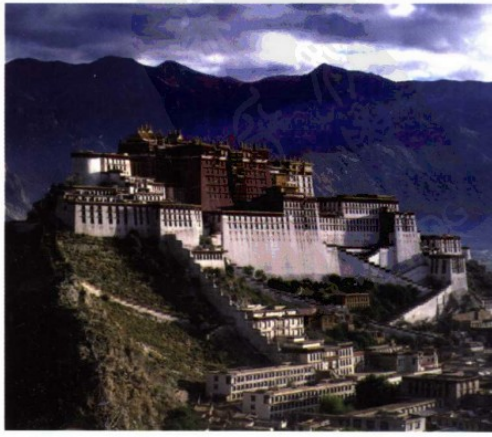
INTRODUCE CHINA IN ENGLISH

魅力城市

Charming Cities



◎ 主编 浩 瀚 李生禄



科学技术文献出版社

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙



用英语说中国

INTRODUCE CHINA IN ENGLISH



古今名人 • Eminent Persons

文化艺术 • Culture and Arts

魅力城市 • Charming Cities

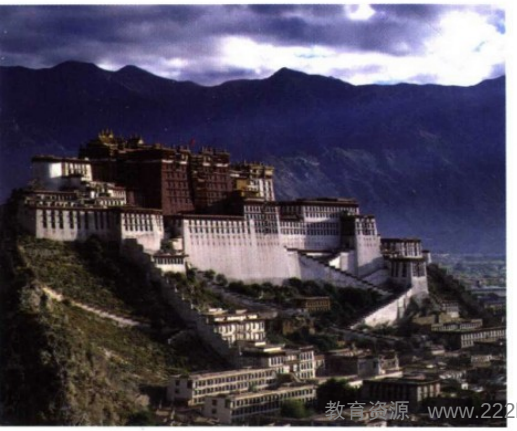
辉煌建设 • Splendid Development

风俗民情 • Folk Customs

旅游亮点 • Scenic Spots

家庭生活 • Family Life

文明史迹 • History



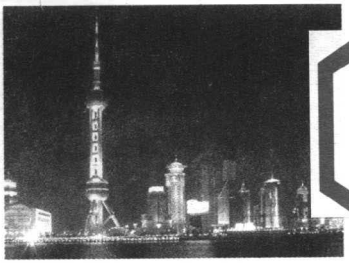
ISBN 978-7-5023-5891-4

9 787502 358914 >

封面设计 宋雪梅

定价：15.00元

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙



H319.4/1571
:2
2008

用英语说中国

INTRODUCE CHINA IN ENGLISH

浩瀚英语

魅力城市

Charming Cities

主编　浩　瀚　李生禄
编委　齐　齐　宋美盈　王亚彬　李　硕
李庆磊　刘雷雷　马　兰　蔡　丹
姚　青　李林德　潘永亮　王应铜
赵秀丽　尹晓洁　韩　磊　刘梓红
徐　萍　马　迅　徐光伟　赵修臣
李明亚　陈伟华　李　红
策划　北京浩瀚英语研究所

科学技术文献出版社
Scientific and Technical Documents Publishing House
北京

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

魅力城市/浩瀚，李生禄主编. -北京：科学技术文献出版社，2008.2
(用英语说中国)
ISBN 978-7-5023-5891-4

Ⅰ.魅… Ⅱ.①浩… ②李… Ⅲ.①英语-语言读物 ②城市-概况-中国
Ⅳ.H319.4：K

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字(2007)第 193762 号

出　版　者　科学技术文献出版社
地　　址　北京市复兴路 15 号(中央电视台西侧)/100038
图书编务部电话　(010)51501739
图书发行部电话　(010)51501720，(010)51501722(传真)
邮购部电话　(010)51501729
网　　址　http://www.stdph.com
E-mail：stdph@istic.ac.cn
策划编辑　李　洁　崔　岩
责任编辑　崔　岩
责任校对　唐　炜
责任出版　王杰馨
发　行　者　科学技术文献出版社发行　全国各地新华书店经销
印　刷　者　富华印刷包装有限公司
版(印)次　2008 年 2 月第 1 版第 1 次印刷
开　　本　880×1230　32 开
字　　数　282 千
印　　张　9.75
印　　数　1～8000 册
定　　价　15.00 元

© 版权所有　违法必究
购买本社图书，凡字迹不清、缺页、倒页、脱页者，本社发行部负责调换。

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

前言 Foreword

中国是一个历史悠久的文明古国。当代中国在秉承优秀传统的同时，与时俱进，在世界民族发展的队伍中傲然前行。随着我国国民经济及对外交流的发展，全国城市面貌日新月异，已经进入了一个推进城乡一体化发展的新阶段，城市化也取得了很大成绩。随着奥运会的步步临近，向世人更多地展现中国城市的风采、魅力与发展更是势在必行。为此我们特别推出了《用英语说中国——魅力城市》这本书。

全书分为：华北地区、华东地区、东北地区、西北地区、西南地区、华中地区、华南地区七大部分。全方位地介绍中国城市的地理人文知识及发展特点。

本书每部分内容分栏为：

流畅精句：贴切、简单、实用的语句，采用英汉对照的形式，让你脱口而出。

精彩片段：采用具有代表性文章段落，介绍详细具体，一目了然，可让读者获得了解中国城市及学习英语的双重丰收。

文化链接：用汉语讲述相关知识背景，可以让读者更深层地了解中国城市的魅力与内涵。

妙词连珠：鲜活、亮丽词汇，为你脱口而出打下坚实基础。

用英语说中国，不仅让中国走向世界，也让世界更多地了解中国。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

(京)新登字 130 号

内 容 简 介

自从改革开放以来，中国的发展异常迅速，中国城市的面貌也焕然一新。有的古貌依旧，极具传统特色，有的随世界多元化的脚步走进了国际大都市的前列。为了向世人更好地展现中国城市的魅力与发展，我们特编写了《用英语说中国——魅力城市》这本书。全书分为：华北地区、华东地区、东北地区、西北地区、西南地区、华中地区、华南地区七大部分，全方位地介绍中国城市的地理人文知识及发展特点，双语展现，以满足中等英语水平以上的读者学习参考。

科学技术文献出版社是国家科学技术部系统惟一一家中央级综合性科技出版机构，我们所有的努力都是为了使您增长知识和才干。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

目 录



Chapter 1
North China 华北地区

Unit 1 Beijing
北京 …… [1]
Unit 2 Tianjin
天津 …… [11]
Unit 3 Shijiazhuang
石家庄 …… [19]
Unit 4 Huhhot
呼和浩特 …… [25]
Unit 5 Taiyuan
太原 …… [32]



Chapter 2
East China 华东地区

Unit 1 Jinan
济南 …… [40]
Unit 2 Nanjing
南京 …… [49]
Unit 3 Suzhou
苏州 …… [61]
Unit 4 Shanghai
上海 …… [72]
Unit 5 Nanchang
南昌 …… [84]

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 6 Fuzhou
福州 …… [92]
Unit 7 Xiamen
厦门 …… [101]



Chapter 3
Northeast China 东北地区

Unit 1 Harbin
哈尔滨 …… [111]
Unit 2 Changchun
长春 …… [119]
Unit 3 Shenyang
沈阳 …… [126]
Unit 4 Dalian
大连 …… [136]



Chapter 4
Northwest China 西北地区

Unit 1 Urumqi
乌鲁木齐 …… [145]
Unit 2 Lanzhou
兰州 …… [154]
Unit 3 Xining
西宁 …… [162]
Unit 4 Yinchuan
银川 …… [170]
Unit 5 Xi'an
西安 …… [178]



Chapter 5
Southwest China 西南地区

Unit 1 Lhasa

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

拉萨 …… [187]
Unit 2 Kunming
昆明 …… [197]
Unit 3 Dali
大理 …… [206]
Unit 4 Guiyang
贵阳 …… [214]
Unit 5 Chongqing
重庆 …… [223]
Unit 6 Chengdu
成都 …… [231]

Chapter 6
Central China 华中地区

Unit 1 Zhengzhou
郑州 …… [242]
Unit 2 Wuhan
武汉 …… [249]
Unit 3 Changsha
长沙 …… [256]

Chapter 7
South China 华南地区

Unit 1 Guangzhou
广州 …… [265]
Unit 2 Shenzhen
深圳 …… [273]
Unit 3 Haikou
海口 …… [283]
Unit 4 Hong Kong
香港 …… [290]
Unit 5 Macao
澳门 …… [298]

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

1 华北地区
North China

Unit 1 北京 Beijing

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. You need at least six days to cover the important attractions in Beijing.
   要想游遍北京的重要景点，至少需要 6 天时间。
2. The most luxurious and classy hotel with top services is the Beijing International Hotel.
   最豪华、最上档次的宾馆要数北京国际饭店。
3. You do have to try good local dishes in Beijing.
   你确实应该品味一下北京的地方小吃。
4. Tian'anmen Square is 98 acres and great for kite flying in the spring.
   天安门广场面积达 98 英亩，是春天放风筝的好地方。
5. The Chairman Mao Memorial Hall was built in 1977 and opens 9:30 a. m. to 3 or 5 p. m. daily.
   毛主席纪念堂建于 1977 年，每天 9:30 开门，下午 3:00 或 5:00 闭馆。
6. There are the food stalls at night near the East Gate of the Forbidden City with food from all over China.
   晚上在紫禁城东门外附近有汇集全国各地的大排档。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

7. The National Museum has the best of China's artifacts.
中国国家博物馆保存有中国最好的文物。
8. The decoration of old Chinese buildings was bold and skillful in the use of color, and thick, bright colors became a unique characteristic of traditonal Chinese architecture.
中国古建筑的装饰在色彩的使用方面，大胆粗犷、讲究技巧。厚重而明亮的色彩为传统中国建筑的特色。
9. The temple of Heaven was built in the same period as the Forbidden City in 1420, and ranks among the most famous structures in China.
天坛和故宫同建于 1420 年，它是中国最有名的建筑之一。
10. A visit to the Summer Palace usually takes half a day, because it's a 717-acre garden.
参观颐和园通常要花半天时间，因为它占地有 717 英亩。
11. The steles in Yonghegong are incised with Han, Manchurian, Mongolian, and Tibetan script.
雍和宫的匾额是用汉、满、蒙、藏文雕刻的。
12. There are many well-kept "Hutong" in Beijing, lanes crowdedly inhabited by Beijing folks.
北京有许多保存完好的胡同，老北京人拥挤地住在这些小巷子里。
13. Traditional arts and crafts in Beijing are well known both at home and abroad.
北京的传统工艺美术驰名国内外。
14. Beijing has hosted many international conferences and world sports meetings.
北京已经成功地举办过许多国际会议和世界级运动会。
15. Beijing has been successful in the bid for the right to stage the 2008 Olympic Games.
北京已成功地赢得了 2008 年的奥运会举办权。
16. The Great Wall in China is one of the wonders of the world and is known to people all over the world.
中国的长城是世界的一大奇迹并且闻名全世界。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

17. If you have a chance to come to China some day, be sure to go there and have a look at this great wonder.
如果有一天你有机会来到中国，一定要去那儿看一看这个伟大的奇观。
18. The Great Wall meanders from east to west for about 6 350 kilometers or 12 700 li.
长城从东到西蜿蜒约 6 350 公里，也就是 12 700 里。
19. The construction of the Great Wall first began during the Warring States Period about 2 500 years ago.
长城始建于约 2 500 年前的战国时期。
20. In the subsequent dynasties, the Great Wall was rebuilt many times.
在后来的几个朝代，长城又被多次重建。
21. The Great Wall is indeed to crystallization of the industry and wisdom of the Chinese people and also a symbol of the ancient Chinese culture.
长城的确是中国人民劳动和智慧的结晶，也是古代中国文化的象征。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

B 简介 rief Introduction

Beijing is the one of the birthplaces of Chinese Civilization and one of the six ancient capital cities in China. During the last 3 000 years it served as a capital for several dynasties. Since the discovery of a complete skull of Peking man living approximately 200 000 to 500 000 years ago in Zhoukoudian, situated 50 kilometers to the southwest of Beijing proper, Zhoukoudian became world-famous as the home of the Chinese ape-man.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Beijing is the political center of China where the Party's Central Committee, the State Council, ministries and commissions under the government, and more than 140 foreign embassies are located. It is also an international exchange center.

Being one of the biggest industrial bases in China, Beijing's industrial production is the second largest in value among all Chinese cities. An industrial system with iron and steel, coal, machinery, chemical and petroleum, textiles, electronics and other industries as its mainstays has already taken shape. Beijing's arts and crafts are famous for their long history, great variety, and superb workmanship. The most popular ones among them are cloisonne, ivory carving, jade ware, carved lacquer ware, snuff bottles, silk flowers and Beijing's embroidery etc.

As the country's center of culture, education, science and technology, Beijing has more than forty state scientific research institutions, over thirty universities and various exhibition halls, museums, cinemas and palestras. The National Library of China is the largest library in Asia.

It is a hub of communications, with good railroad and air links with all parts of China, as well as with major international cities, thus facilitating the rapid development of tourism as an important industry in Beijing.

Paragraph 2

地理状况
n Geography

Beijing China, a municipality directly under the Central Government is the capital of the People's Republic of China and the country's political, economic, cultural and transportation center as well as a famous historic city. Geographically located in the northwest part of the North China Plain, and covering an area of 16 800 square km. Beijing is the second largest city in China with a population of more than 11 million. It has a semi-humid continental climate in the warm temperate zone. With an annual average temperature of 12 degrees Centigrade and rainfall of 641 millimetres, Beijing is neither cold in winter nor very hot in summer. The best seasons in Beijing

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

are Spring and Autumn. Beijing China is indeed an ideal place to visit all round the year.

Paragraph 3

O 市树和市花 fficial Tree and Flowers

Official city trees: the Chinese scholar tree and oriental cypress

The stately cypress symbolizes the courage and strength of the Chinese people, their simple, and hard working nature and their defiance in the face of aggression. The scholar tree is a symbol of good fortune, joy and well-being.

Official city flowers: China rose and chrysanthemum

The rose, a Chinese native, has been cross bred many times, but it still has half of the original Chinese traits. Known as Perpetual Spring, Monthly Red, Snow Challenger and Victorious, it grows quickly, regenerates easily and is graceful and long blooming (May to October).

The chrysanthemum has many names and varieties. In Beijing potted chrysanthemums may be seen year round. They flower in summer and fall naturally but can be forced to bloom any time of year.

Paragraph 4

E 教育 ducation

Beijing is home to a number of colleges and universities, with more in Beijing than any other city in China. Most of these institutes of higher learning are located in the northwestern section of Beijing.

Two notable institutions are Beijing University, which was founded in 1898, and Qinghua University (1911). As well as having a beautiful campus, Qinghua University is the most esteemed and notable technical and scientific institution in China.

There are also language institutes for foreigners to go and learn Chinese, such as Beijing Language and Culture University (formerly known as

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Beijing Language Institute) in Haidian District. Many foreigners from around the world congregate in this area to learn or improve their Chinese.

Paragraph 5

History 历史

Beijing's beginnings were that of a trading town for the tribes in Shandong and central China as well as the Koreans and Mongols. It grew until it became the capital of the Yan Kingdom during the Warring States Period and eventually became known as Yanjing during the Liao Dynasty. In 1 215 AD, Yanjing (Beijing) was destroyed by Genghis Khan with fire and it emerged from the destruction in 1 272 as Dadu, which means Great Capital. Dadu, also known as Khanbalik, was the capital for Kublai Khan, Genghis Khan's grandson.

There was temporary peace from about 1280-1300, during which many foreigners traveled along the Silk Road, but in 1368 Zhu Yuanzhang (Chu Yuan-chang) changed the relatively peaceful era. He was responsible for a revolt that allowed him to overtake Beijing and thus the began of the Ming Dynasty. One of the things he did was change the city's name to Beiping, which means Northern Peace, and changed the capital to Nanjing in the South. Thirty years later around 1398-1400, after Zhu's death, his forth son, Zhu Di took over the throne and moved the capital back to Beijing (changing the name back from Beiping), which means "northern capital." Beijing developed and flourished during this time, building many of the famous palaces and temples that are still present today. Tiantan and the Forbidden city are two Chinese Literature.

Paragraph 6

Beijing's Competitiveness 北京的竞争力

As the capital city of China, Beijing enjoys exceptional advantages in many respects. It has the fourth-highest overall rate of competitiveness

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

among all the cities on the mainland. Its comprehensive employment growth rate, comprehensive market occupation and comprehensive income level are fairly high, and its comprehensive GDP growth rate and comprehensive environmental and resources cost are satisfactory.

Beijing is home to more top-level universities and scientific research institutions than any other city in the country. Endowed with a long history and a rich cultural tradition, Beijing boasts competitiveness in talent that is next to none in China. It also scores very high marks for its quantity, quality, deployment, demand and education of human resources.

Beijing's capital competitiveness occupies second place in China. It has convenient fund-raising opportunities, the country's highest index of financial control capacity, and substantial capital.

Beijing has the strongest competitiveness in science and technology among all Chinese cities, reflected in its superior position in science and technology, innovation capacity and commercialization of research findings.

Beijing's structural competitiveness leads the country, with an advanced industrial structure and a complete economic system.

It also has the nation's second-strongest competitiveness in infrastructure facilities. It has constructed complete internal infrastructure facilities, for the 2008 Olympic Games, Beijing, as the host, will continue to improve its infrastructure facilities.

Speaking of location-based competitiveness, Beijing benefits the most from its political location while also enjoying excellent natural and economic positioning. But it scores poorly in the index of resource advantages. In particular, the city is in great need of water.

Paragraph 7

北京——最和谐的城市
Beijing: Most Compatible City

Beijing is the most compatible city in contemporary China, with a niche for any kind of lifestyle. Some people feel out of place and depressed back in their hometown, but in Beijing there is always at least one person or so-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

cial stratum with whom to identify. If you want a voice in this world, and you want it to be heard within the shortest possible time, Beijing is the place to be.

Beijing lives up to its accolade as the center of China. Since its successful bid for the 2008 Olympics, the city has been ever more lavish in its municipal construction. Within all 12 life-quality indexes, Beijing either holds more "first" position than any other city, or is among the top few. This is particularly the case as regards residents' income, consumption structure, educational input, medical and hygiene services, general state of health, employment opportunities and cultural and recreational activities. Beijing changes every day and its immense promise, congeniality and compatibility as a truly international metropolis attract ever more people. This feeling is enhanced by the capital's mix of traditional Chinese architecture and masterpieces designed by world-renowned architects.

Beijing has inherited so many traditions that it is often faced with the dilemma of conserving them amidst the capital's modern construction and development. Hutong and siheyuan courtyards represent traditonal Beijing, but the majority of their inhabitants long for a better living environment. It is apparent that Beijingers enjoy a high level of medical, educational, cultural and sports services as well as good working conditions and high incomes, but housing conditions have improved little. Housing conditions in Beijing ranked 82nd out of 100 cities.

Cultural Links
文化链接

公主坟名字的由来

公主坟街心花园满是苍松翠柏，据史料记载，该坟埋葬的并非真正的公主，而是顺治皇帝母亲的义女—孔四贞。她被称为公主，并予厚葬，是有其历史原因的。孔四贞的父亲叫孔有德，汉族，辽阳人，在明末清初不是一般人物。孔有德原为明朝将领，天启五年，清太宗兴兵伐明，为了招贤纳士，发布了一份带有收买性质的诏文。孔有德看到明朝的没落腐败，于是投降了清廷。清兵入关后，率兵驰骋疆场，足迹遍布大江南北，竭力效忠清

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

王朝，立下了赫赫战功，顺治皇帝视他为开国良将，曾多次给予重赏与表彰。顺治九年，孔有德率部南征柳州，与明朝将领李定国交战失败，最后于桂林和他两位夫人一起自杀身亡。父母阵亡后，年幼的孔四贞回到北京。顺治皇帝的母亲孝庄皇后将此功臣之女认定为自己的义女，把她留在宫中抚养，让她分享荣誉，并封她为和硕公主。孔四贞自幼生长在军营中，善骑射，通武艺，长大后嫁给内务大臣孙延龄为妻。后来，清王朝特赐孔四贞继承其父"定南王"的王位，并令孙延龄同其妻往广西节制军务。孙到广西后纵兵骄横，并投靠吴三桂背叛清廷。孔四贞坚决反对孙、吴的叛逆行为，毅然率兵进行讨伐。孔四贞智勇双全，很快就平息了云南的叛乱，为清王朝的安定局势立下了一大功劳。平定云南叛乱后，康熙帝召她回京，并为她赐封王爵，成为清朝的一代女王。孔四贞逝世后，清廷以隆重的葬礼相待，将她埋葬于此，并称之为"公主坟"。

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

Principal Sites Around Tian'anmen 天安门周围主要景点	北京王府饭店 Wangfujing Grand Hotel 王府井大饭店
The Palace Museum (/The Forbidden City) 故宫(紫禁城)	Tianlun Dynasty Hotel 天伦王朝大饭店
The Great Wall 万里长城	Beijing International Hotel 北京国际饭店
The Site of Peking Man 北京猿人遗址	Beijing Hilton 北京希尔顿酒店
The Summer Palace 颐和园	Shangri-La Hotel Beijing 北京香格里拉饭店
The Temple of Heaven 天坛	Diaoyutai State Guest Hotel 钓鱼台国宾馆
The Ming Tombs 明十三陵	ANA Beijing New Century Hotel 北京新世纪饭店
Yonghegong Lamasery (/The Lama Temple) 雍和宫	Jianguo Hotel 建国饭店
China World Hotel 中国大饭店	
Beijing Hotel 北京饭店	
Palace Hotel Beijing	

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Traders Hotel 国贸饭店
Beijing Capital Hotel
北京首都大酒店
Holiday Inn Changfen
长峰假日酒店
Xiang Jiang Shui Xiang 香江水乡
Xiao Wang Fu 北京小王府
Paulaner Brauhaus
普拉那啤酒坊餐厅
Peking Union Medical College Hospital 北京协和医院
Beijing University People's Hospital
北京大学人民医院
Beijing International SOS Clinic
北京国际救援中心
Foreigner Employee Service
北京市外企服务集团
Beijing Economic-Technological Development Area
北京经济技术开发区
Tianzhu Airport Industrial Zone
北京天竺空港工业区
Zhongguancun Science Park
中关村科技园

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 2 天津 Tianjin

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Tianjin, one of four municipalities in China, is also called "jin".
   天津是中国四大直辖市之一，又称为"津"。
2. Tianjin is the biggest opening up coastal city in north China and the economic center of Bohai Sea rim.
   天津是中国北方最大的沿海开放城市，中国渤海沿岸的主要经济中心。
3. It is also a famous historical and cultural city.
   这也是一个历史文化名城。
4. Tianjin is located from 38°34′ to 40°15′ north latitude, from 116°43′ to 118°04′ east longitude, in the lower reach of Haihe River.
   天津地处北纬38°34′至40°15′，东经116°43′至118°04′之间，在海河下游。
5. It lies in the northeastern part of Huabei Plain with Bohai Sea to its east, Yanshan Mountain to its north.
   它位于华北平原东北部，东临渤海，北接燕山。
6. Tianjin is in the east 8th time zone.
   天津在东八时区。
7. It is only 137 kilometers from Tianjin to Beijing, capital of China.
   天津距首都北京只有137公里。
8. The whole city covers an area of 11 919 square kilometers.
   全市面积11 919平方公里。
9. Tianjin is in the semi-humid warm and temperate continental monsoon climatic region with very distinctive differences in temperature in four seasons.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

天津是在半湿润温带大陆性季风气候区，气温变化非常明显，四季气温差异大。

10. 75% of precipitation is focused in June, July and August.
75% 的降水集中在 6、7、8 月。

11. The duration of sunshine in Tianjin is quite long with very strong sun radiation.
天津的日照时间很长，太阳辐射非常强烈。

12. Tianjin has 22 sister cities in 18 countries.
天津市有 18 个国家的 22 所姐妹城市。

13. Foreign relations in Tianjin involve many aspects in economy, trade, science and technology, sports and hygiene.
天津的对外交流涉及许多方面，如经贸、科技、体育和卫生。

14. The city flower of Tianjin is rose, symbol of peace and friendship.
天津市市花是玫瑰，象征和平与友谊。

15. In the first decade of the new century, the development goal of the city can be called "Three-step" Strategy and "Five strategic Measures".
在新世纪的头十年，该城的发展目标可称为"三步走"战略和"五个战略举措"。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

地理概况 Geographical Situation

The whole city covers an area of 11 919 square kilometers. It is 189 kilometers from north to south and 117 kilometers from east to west. City administrated area is 4 334 square kilometers while 7 585 square kilometers are under attached country administration. The land area in Tianjin is 8 772.30 square kilometers while water covers about 3 147.40 square kilometers. The

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

circumference of the frontier is about 900 kilometers with 152.8 kilometers of coastal line and 700 kilometers of landline.

Tianjin is in the semi-humid warm and temperate continental monsoon climatic region with very distinctive differences in temperature in four seasons. The annual precipitation is some 600mm while annual temperature average stays at 12.3℃. The frost-free days in Tianjin amounts 200 days. 75% of precipitation is focused in June, July and August. The duration of sunshine in Tianjin is quite long with very strong sun radiation.

Paragraph 2

天津的历史
Tianjin's History

In ancient time, this place was sea, but the Yellow River flooded Tianjin three times and created a plain by the sand it carried. Today, seashells of ancient times can still be found here. The name Tianjin was first used in the first year of Yongle Reign in Ming Dynasty, meaning "Emperor's ford". In the second year of Yongle Reign (1404), Tianjin became a walled garrison to safeguard Beijing. In 1860, Tianjin was opened as a trading port, becoming a major commercial city second only to Shanghai and the biggest financial center in north China. After the funding of People's Republic of China, Tianjin was made a municipality. When Reform and Opening up policy was carried out, Tianjin was among the first batch of cities appointed by central government as opening up coastal cities.

Paragraph 3

自然资源
Natural Resources

As far as natural resources are concerned, Tianjin has very rich reserves of petroleum and natural gas in Bohai and Dagang. Annual output of crude oil can reach 10 million ton while that of gas is 900 million cubic meters. It is also verified that the reserve coal is over 300 million tons. Other minerals include Manganese, gold, copper, Tungsten, etc, most of which

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

are of extraction value. The 150 kilometer of coasts line enables us to produce 2.38 million tons of crude salt, about 1/10 of the overall production in China. Subterranean heat resources are also very rich in Tianjin. The temperature of water ranges from 30℃ to 90℃. Besides, there are over 200 square kilometers of waste land with good transportation and low development cost, which will fuel up the development of the city in the future.

Paragraph 4

S经济概况
urvey of Economy

Tianjin is the cradle of modem machinery and weaving industry in China. Dozens of industrial zones and areas were set up since the founding of PRC, which topped Tianjin among most other Chinese cities. Famous products like Beijing brand TV, Flying Pigeon brand bike and Seagull brand watch can fully represent the glory of Tianjin industry in the past. Since the reform and opening up, the traditional industrial base began to take a new look. Electronic information, biological technology, modern medicine and new power and other new and high technology began to develop in this city. In 1980, Tianjin was appointed as an opening up city. By the end of 2004, over 118 countries and regions have made investment in Tianjin setting up 16 thousand of enterprises. 106 of the top 500 businesses have set branches in Tianjin. The harbor of Tianjin is the biggest artificial depth harbor of China and the biggest harbor in the north of China. There are the biggest wharf cluster of container and the biggest wharf using appropriate for the bulk food and coke wharf in China. The new coastal area, consisting Tianjin Port, Tianjin Economic and Technology Development Area and Tianjin Bonded area, has attracted a lot of world-famous businesses like Motorola from USA, Toyota from Japan, Samsung from South Korea, and Novordisk from Danmark. The new coastal area has become the landmark of opening up. In the past decade, GDP in Tianjin has been growing constantly by 12.5 percent and Tianjin is becoming a fast growing economic zone.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 5

E科技教育
ducation of Technology

Tianjin is the birth place of the first university in China. In 1895, Tianjin Beiyang School, predecessor of Tianjin University was founded by Sheng Xuanhuai, a Mandarin official of Qing Dynasty. Nankai university, is the mother school of Zhou Enlai, former Chinese premier. There are currently 33 universities and colleges in Tianjin with 150 000 college students. Tianjin is among those areas which first enforced nine-year-compulsory education, so the quality of labor in Tianjin is very good. There are about 1 000 research centers and technology development organizations with over 600 000 professionals. The comprehensive scientific power is among the top in China.

Paragraph 6

A文化艺术
rts and culture

Tianjin is a famous cultural and historical city, and it is also the origin of arts and culture in north China, therefore, it is always regarded as the "cradle of drama", "hometown to arts". Professional art organizations include Peking opera, Pingju opera, Hebei bangzi (a Chinese local opera), modern drama, dance symphony etc. Museums in Tianjin have housed over 6 000 valuable relics. Folk arts in Tianjin is also very impressive, such as new year pictures, clay Zhang figures, kites Wei and "sculpture Liu" brick sculpture. Tianjin is at the same time a very modern city. The 415. 2 meter high TV tower, first rate stadium, largest book store can fully represent the development of Tianjin.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 7

历史圣地 Historical Resorts

There are 37 state-level and city-level carefully reserved historical resorts. Dule Monastery, a wood-structure temple built 1 000 years ago, still lies in Jixin county. The Huangya Pass Great Wall in Panshan Mountain of Jixian County, meanders along mountains over 41 kilometers. Panshan mountain is considered the most beautiful mountain in east of Beijing. Other relics include Tianhou Temple, Confucius Temple, Dabeiyuan Monastery, Guangdong Guild Hall, etc. Tianjin is also "Expo of world architecture", for in Tianjin you can find buildings of various styles telling many bygone stories.

Paragraph 8

发展目标 Development Goal

In the first decade of the new century, the development goal of the city can be called "Three-step" Strategy and "Five strategic Measures". Step 1, to increase the per capita GDP to US $3 000 by the end of 2002 and accomplish major indexes of well-off society. Step 2, to double GNP and Per capita disposable income of 2003 or 4 years ahead of our original schedule, bringing overall economy and people's income to higher level. Step 3, by 2010, increase the per capita GDP to $6 000, making Tianjin a modernized international port and major financial center in north China and realize modernization earlier.

"Five strategic Measures":

1. Devote major efforts to development of Haihe economy
2. Devote major efforts to development of ocean economy
3. Devote major efforts to development of advantageous industry.
4. Devote major efforts to development of economy in the counties and rural districts

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

5. Devote major efforts to development of medium and small-sized enterprises and private business.

Cultural Links
文化链接

天津小吃

狗不理包子。到天津不吃狗不理包子，是旅游者的遗憾。刚出屉的热气腾腾爽眼舒心的包子，看上去如同薄雾之中的含苞秋菊，再咬上一口，油水汪汪，香而不腻。狗不理包子好吃关键在于选料、配料、搅拌以至揉面、擀面，都是有一定的绝招儿的，特别是包子褶花匀称，每个包子都不少于15个褶。

耳朵眼炸糕。耳朵眼炸糕的生产有百余年历史。清光绪年间，创始人刘万春以卖炸糕谋生，由于精工细做，并逐渐形成独特风格，加之该店铺选址在北门外窄小的耳朵眼胡同出口处，被众食客戏称为“耳朵眼炸糕”，自那时起就旺销不衰。1957年该店加入公私合营机构，1978年经市饮食公司定名为“耳朵眼炸糕”。

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

TV Tower Town 天塔城	Dickson Hotel Tianjin 天津帝城大酒店
Solitary Joy Temple 独乐寺	New World Astor Hotel 利顺德大饭店
The Panshan Mountain 盘山	Tianjin Geneva Hotel 天津津利华大酒店
Yangcun Mini World 杨村小世界	Tianjin Jinwan Hotel 天津今晚大酒店
Hyatt Regency Tianjin 天津金港酒店	Kiessling's Restaurant 起士林西餐厅
Renaissance Tianjin Hotel 滨江万丽酒店	Broadway Cafe 贵宾楼西餐厅
Sheraton Tianjin Hotel 天津喜来登大酒店	
Crystal Palace Hotel 水晶宫饭店	

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

City Slicker Saloon 老外牛仔餐厅	Chuyuntian Restaurant 楚运天酒楼
Cosy Cafe 西餐酒吧	Serena 女神西餐厅
Sgt. Pepper's Music Hall 沙金音乐西餐厅	Tianjin First Central Hospital 天津市第一中心医院
Drinking House 尊豪西餐厅	First Hospital of Tianjin 天津市第一医院
Goubuli Restaurant 狗不理大酒店	

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 3 石家庄 Shijiazhuang

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Shijiazhuang, the capital of Hebei province, with a total population of six million, is an industrial city.
   石家庄，河北省的省会，有600万人口，是一座工业城市。
2. Shijiazhuang is about 175 miles southwest of Beijing.
   石家庄位于北京西南约175英里处。
3. Autumn is the best time to travel to Shijiazhuang. Winter is cold and bleak, spring somewhat dusty, and summer hot and humid.
   秋天是到石家庄旅游的最佳时节，因为冬天又冷又阴，春天多尘土，夏天则是又热又潮湿。
4. It needs only 2.5 hours from Beijing to Shijiazhuang by train.
   从北京到石家庄，乘火车只需两个半小时。
5. In the west of Shijiazhuang is the hilly country of Taihang Mountain.
   石家庄西部是太行山脉。
6. Shijiazhuang has a monsoon climate of semi-moist in warm temperate zone.
   石家庄是半湿润暖温带季风气候。
7. Light industries are its major industries.
   主要产业是轻工业。
8. In China, the output of cotton and cotton yarn are in the first place.
   棉花、棉纱产量都占全国首位。
9. In agriculture, there is wheat, corn, cotton, meat and fruits.
   在农业方面，有小麦、玉米、棉花、肉类、水果。
10. The railway and the highway system here are both well developed.
    这里的铁路和公路系统都十分完善。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

11. And there are some other famous places too. Such as Fuqing Temple, Zhengding ancient city, Longxing Temple, Hua Tower and so on.
还有其他一些著名的地方，例如：福清寺、古城正定、龙兴寺、华塔等。
12. Here, the traditional specialties are braised chicken and Fenzhou cooking wine.
这里的传统小吃有扒鸡、汾州料酒。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

地理概况 Geographical Situation

Location: situated in the middle south of Hebei province; on the Huabei Plain; between 38°04′ north latitude and 114°29′ east longitude; with Beijing and Tianjin in the north and the Bohai Sea and Huabei oil field east; leaning against the Taihang Range and bordering on the Shanxi province in the west.

Shijiazhuang is a major hub for China's rail network and home to the biggest People's Liberation Army School and the biggest pharmaceutical factory in China. It is also a center for the study of traditional Chinese medicine.

Physical Features: the urban district with smooth terrain; higher in the west and lower east; dotted with lakes

Climatic Features: located in the temperate zone, enjoying the continental climate; four seasons clearly demarcated with cold winter and hot

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

summer; with frost-free period of 200 days

Average Temperature: 13℃ annually; annual average sunshine more than 2400 hours

Rainfall: annual even precipitation 570 mm; maximum average humidity 62 percent.

Paragraph 2

H历史 istory

It is originally set up in earlier Ming dynasty; used to be the collecting and distributing center for goods to Yan, Zhao and San Jin; having the fame of "the thoroughfare between north and south, the throat of Yan (Hebei province) and Jin (Shanxi province)"; used to be called "Shijia city", "Shimen city", etc.

Paragraph 3

E经济 conomy

Shijiazhuang's comprehensive market occupation and comprehensive employment growth are fairly good, but its comprehensive economic growth and comprehensive per-capita income level are fairly low.

Shijiazhuang's talent competitiveness puts it in 25th place. Its human resources education level is very high, but the demand of emerging industries for personnel with enterprising spirit is quite small.

Shijiazhuang's capital competitiveness is above average. Bank loans and private venture capital are easy to access, as there are plentiful financial institutions with wide service coverage. The city's financial control capacity is fairly strong, but the capital quality is very poor.

Though Shijiazhuang has many universities and scientific research insti-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

tutions, there has been no obvious improvement in its scientific and technological strength or scientific innovation, and the effects of the commercialization of scientific findings haven't been fully demonstrated. In addition, the growth of high-tech industry is relatively slow.

Regarding structural competitiveness, Shijiazhuang has an advanced industrial structure and a fairly good industrial aggregation foundation. The coordination between its urbanization and industrialization, and the adaptability of its economic system are mediocre, and its economic system is not yet complete owing to inadequate service outlets.

Shijiazhuang's construction of IT infrastructure facilities is developing rapidly, but the lack of a sound port, aviation and road network hampers the city's competitiveness. Besides, the cost of infrastructure facilities is very high.

The location-based competitiveness of Hebei's capital city is not high. Except for its good political and cultural locations, Shijiazhuang does not have much of an advantage in its natural and economic locations or resources supply.

Shijiazhuang's environmental competitiveness is in 48th place, with low indices of urban environment comfort and natural and artificial environment compatibility. Great efforts are needed to improve the urban artificial environment.

Speaking of Shijiazhuang's cultural competitiveness, the city is only average in terms of value orientation, innovation climate and communications ethics.

There has been no obvious progress in its institutional competitiveness. The city's property rights protection is unsatisfactory, and its micro economy decision-making lacks flexibility. Shijiazhuang government's weak financial strength hinders its planning and service provision capacity. Efforts should

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

be made to strengthen the protection of property rights and legal construction, as well as to cultivate the market. The city also needs to open wider and add more vigor to its economy.

The indices of the items concerning Shijiazhuang's opening-up competitiveness are all fairly low, leaving much room for improvement.

Paragraph 4

Zhaozhou Bridge 赵州桥

This bridge was built on the Jiaohe River about 2.5 kilometers south of Zhaoxian County, which was called Zhaozhou in ancient times. The bridge was constructed in AD 605—616. Designed by a well-known Chinese mason, Li Chun, it is made of stone, 50.82 meters long and 10 meters wide, with an unusual arch that is 7.23 meters high with a span of 37.35 meters. The stone railing and columns on the bridge were carved with beautiful dragon and phoenix designs. One of the earliest Chinese arch bridges with a long open-spandrel arch in the middle and two smaller arches on each side, this bridge occupies an important place in the history of Chinese bridge building and has been of interest to tourists and engineers alike.

Cultural Links 文化链接

石家庄

石家庄市是河北省省会，为该省政治、经济、文化和交通中心。市区人口 161 万，现辖辛集、藁城、晋州、新乐、鹿泉 5 县级市，平山、井陉、栾城、正定、行唐、灵寿、高邑、赵县、赞皇、深泽、无极、元氏 12 县。

石家庄原是获鹿县的一个小村庄，1902 年随铁路兴建，逐渐发展为城市。1925 年曾与休门镇合设石门市。1948 年改称石家庄。

石家庄是一座新兴的工业城市，主要有纺织、机械、煤炭、化工。市内有华北烈士陵园，伟大的国际主义白衣战士白求恩、柯棣华墓就设在陵园西部。石家庄附近名胜古迹主要有正定隆兴寺，赵州桥、苍岩山等。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

Hebei Century Hotel 河北世纪大饭店	Yuhua District 裕华区 Jingxingkuang District 井陉矿区
Crowne Plaz Zhijiazhuang 世贸广场酒店	Xinji City 辛集市 Gaocheng City 藁城市
Hebei Sunshine Hotel 河北阳光酒店	Jinzhou City 晋州 Xinle City 新乐市
Hebei Medical University Second Hospital 河北医科大学附属第二医院	Luquan City 鹿泉市 Jingjing County 井陉县 Zhengding County 正定
Baoding High-Tech Development Zone 保定国家高新技术产业开发区	Luancheng County 栾城县 Xingtang County 行唐县 Lingshou County 灵寿县
Qinhuangdao Economic & Technological Development Zone 秦皇岛经济技术开发区	Gaoyi County 高邑县 Shenze County 深泽县 Zanhuang County 赞皇县
Chang'an District 长安区	Wuji County 无极县
Qiaodong District 桥东区	Pingshan County 平山县
Qiaoxi District 桥西区	Yuanshi County 元氏县
Xinhua District 新华区	Zhao County 赵县

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 4 呼和浩特 Huhhot

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. The capital of Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region is Huhhot.
   内蒙古自治区的首府是呼和浩特市。
2. Genghis Khan united the tribes living in Mongolian grasslands in 1206.
   1206 年,成吉思汗统一了生活在蒙古草原的部落。
3. The people are charming and wear their traditional costums during Nadamu Festival.
   在那达慕节日期间,人们都穿着节日的盛装。
4. A mosquito net might be useful in the grasslands.
   去草原时准备一顶蚊帐是很有用的。
5. Out in the rolling grasslands, you can see for miles.
   在草原上极目眺望,你会看得很远。
6. Huhhot means "Green City" in Mongolian.
   呼和浩特在蒙古语中是"绿色之城"的意思。
7. Huhhot Machine Tool Accessory Plant is China's largest chuck manufacturer and research center.
   呼和浩特机床附件厂是中国最大的卡盘制造商及研究中心。
8. The "Universal" chucks are widely sold in China and more than 40 countries and regions.
   "通用"卡盘在中国很畅销并在其他 40 多个国家和地区很受欢迎。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

City Situation 城市概况

The provincial capital of Huhhot lies at the center of Inner Mongolia on the Tumochuan Plain, about 670 km from Beijing. The city's name means "green city" in Mongolian and with a population 2.4 million people, it is the cultural, financial and economic hub for the Region. It is China's leading center for woolen textiles and has also developed industries in leather, sugar, machine making, steel and animal product processing.

Apart from the harsh climate the city is relatively pleasant with a mixture of modern and traditional architecture surrounded by grasslands.

It is also an important provincial transportation center linking Inner Mongolia with the outside. Air and rail links are available for travel to and from the region.

Paragraph 2

Climate 气候

Huhhot is in the Northwestern continental climate, with no severe coldness in winter, nor scorching hotness in summer. The average temperature all the year is around 6 centigrade, and the annual rainfall about 350-500 milimeters.

Paragraph 3

Transportation 交通

Road: Huhhot is one of the communication centers in Northwest China close to 3 national highways, among which No. 110 is the main artery con-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

necting Beijing, the capital city and the Great Northwest China Region. And Huhhot-Baotou expressway has been put into use already. Moreover, an expressway to Beijing is going to be built soon.

Railway: Huhhot is linked to the national railway networks by Beijing-Baotou and Beijing-Lanzhou lines. There are passenger trains directly to Beijing, Shanghai, Xi'an, Yinchuan, Lanzhou, Nanjing, and Ningbo, and international through trains to Ulan Bator and Moscow.

Airport: Huhhot Baita Airport is merely 5 kilometers away from HETDZ. At present, there are 48 civil routes to metropolises across the country, and 2 international routes to Ulan Bator, capital of Mongolia. Besides irregular chartered flights started to shuttle between Huhhot and Hong Kong, and between Huhhot and Tokyo via Shanghai.

Paragraph 4

Natural Resources 自然资源

The area surrounding the Zone abounds in natural resources. Within the range of 200 square kilometers, there are tremendous reserves of metal and nonmetal resources. The nonmetals include coal, kaolin, rare earth, graphite, mica, and quartz; and the metals of over 100 kinds cover iron, cuprum, zincum, and so on. So far, there are 170 mines identified, and the reserve for rare earth ranks the first in the world. The area also possesses rich farm and livestock resources such as animal hide, fur, down, milk, meat, and grass, and it also possesses fine-quality natural herbs such as buckthorn, licorice, codonopsis pilosula, lily, and astragalus membranaceus. In addition, ground water here is in excellent quality.

Paragraph 5

Human Resources 人力资源

In Huhhot there are 124 scientific research and design institutions of various categories, and 9 universities and colleges which account for 80 per-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

cent of higher education schools in the Autonomous Region.

Paragraph 6

工业结构
Industrial Structure

In Huhhot, a relatively complete industrial structure has now taken shape with the following industries as the mainstay, namely, dairy product processing, biomedicine, electronic information, new type materials, green food, fine chemistry, machinery, and textile industry. And in it hi-tech production takes the leading position.

Paragraph 7

投资亮点
Investment Priorities

Green food processing represented by dairy production; electronic information industry; valuable metals refining and purification and jewelry processing; biomedicine and special medicine production; comprehensive use of local fur and down, meat, wild medicine, and rare earth through modern high-technology; developing the road, water supply, heating, sewage disposal, and large plot estate exploitation.

Paragraph 8

呼和浩特的竞争力
Competitiveness of Huhhot

Huhhot's competitiveness in talent is fairly weak. Its educational level is average, but the quantity, quality and deployment of human resources in Huhhot are all unsatisfactory.

Huhhot's capital competitiveness is very weak, too. Though the quality of capital is fairly good, the quantity is not large enough, the money can not be easily accessed, and the city's financial control capacity is not strong.

Huhhot's competitiveness in science and technology is also very weak,

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

with little advantage in terms of scientific and technological strength, scientific innovation or commercialization of scientific findings.

Huhhot's structural competitiveness better. Its industrial structure is advanced, but the economic system and industrial aggregation are incomplete, and efforts are needed to improve the transfer of the economic structure and flexibility of economic system.

The competitiveness of infrastructure facilities in Huhhot lags behind that of most cities. In addition, the urban, external and IT infrastructure facilities all need massive improvement.

Huhhot has fairly good location—based competitiveness thanks to its rich supply of resources, making it the leader among the country. But it doesn't benefit much from its natural and economic locations.

Huhhot's environmental competitiveness is not satisfactory. It needs to do more to improve its urban environment in terms of quality and comfort, and natural and artificial environment compatibility as well.

Huhhot's cultural competitiveness is below the average level. The residents have no more than an ordinary awareness of business, and the city's climate for innovation and the locals' pioneering spirit and communications ethics are all unsatisfactory.

Huhhot's institutional competitiveness is not strong. The local market is fairly mature, but the protection of property rights and the examination and approval and regulation of the government are mediocre, and the legal system needs great improvement.

The city's governance competitiveness is not strong, and its public relations capacity is the worst among all the cities in the country.



好汉三艺

摔跤:旗级那达慕,一般 256 对摔跤手(布魁)参加,不分旗内旗外,每对摔跤手摔跤的时间不加限制。赛出名次大约用 3 天时间。冠军要过几关。发奖范围有冠军、亚军、第三、第四,上八名、下八名以及 16、32、64 名等

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

不同规格。布魁的服装为结实的“昭都克”（熟牛皮坎肩）、蒙古靴、阔裆裤、祥云图案的套裤等。还要系花腰带子，项戴缨圈。比赛前，将列成为左右两队的布魁、首尾交叉配对子。布魁入场时，各方的指挥和四位歌手唱歌，唱到第三遍时，以特殊的舞步入场。这时，大会主持人宣布布魁的姓名和出生地。布魁到赛台前躬身行礼，绕场地右转一圈，同各自的对手交手。由老布魁和懂得摔跤规则的人当裁判。分出名次之后发奖品之前，有两位年迈并且跳跃姿势好看的布魁，也以常规形式进行表演赛，但不等摔出结果就被人拉开，让他俩分别坐于红布魁两边，同样授予奖品。在全旗比赛中多次夺魁的布魁得到“健将”称号，成为荣誉布魁，享受食禄。旗级那达慕授予冠军“九九奖”。亚军、第三名等分别发奖。

赛马：马为五畜之首，蒙古人对赛马很重视。多数牧民平时发现好马，进行调教，赛马中马，分快马、走马和颠马。快马，八岁以上的赛程 60 里；八岁以下的 40-50 里；走马，赛程 30 里。旗级那达慕的冠军马，授予“骏马”称号，佩戴缨子和彩带。快马骡骑比赛；多由儿童们进行。赛马时，有若干骑马裁判参加。一二三等马分别授旗做记号。

射箭：射箭比赛是男子汉的一大荣耀，一般距离 70 或 45 弓。弓身外用竹片，内衬角片制成。两角儿相接处是坚木做成的把儿。弓的两端用皮筋弦打紧。用于比赛的弓，其强度为 25 弦或 50 弦。箭用柳条做杆，鹰羽做尾，长 3 尺。射箭比赛时，选手们从指定距离，用同样数目的箭，向靶射第一轮。选优参加第二、第三轮比赛。以中靶心、内环、外环数折计分数。

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

Zhaojun Tomb 昭君墓	呼伦贝尔草原
Dazhao Temple 大召寺	Hulun Lake 呼伦湖
Genghis Khan Mausoleum	Xincheng Hotel 新城宾馆
成吉思汗陵	Holiday Inn 呼和浩特假日酒店
Genghis Khan Temple 成吉思汗庙	Phoenix Hotel 内蒙古国航大厦
Trench of Jin 金朝战壕	Pinnacle Hotel 宾悦大酒店
Hulunbuir Pasture Land	Inner Mongolia Hotel 内蒙古饭店

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Victoria Cafe 维多利亚咖啡厅	内蒙古人民医院
Caoyuan Mingzhu Restaurant 草原明珠大酒店	Inner Mongolia Medical College Affiliated Hospital 内蒙古医学院附属医院
Inner Mongolia People's Hospital	

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 5 太原 Taiyuan

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Taiyuan is the provincial capital of Shanxi province.
   太原是山西省省会.
2. Taiyuan was founded in the Western Zhou, more than three thousand years ago.
   太原建于3000多年前的西周时期。
3. Because of its strategic location, Taiyuan was the site of many wars.
   因为自古便是战略要地,所以太原经历了多次战争。
4. The walls, shops and homes in Pingyao have untouched since Ming dynasty and Qing dynasty.
   平遥古城中的城墙、商店、民居还保存着明清两代的原样。
5. As a whole, Taiyuan covers an area of 7 thousand square kilometers and has a population of 2.67 million.
   太原占地大约7 000平方公里,人口约为267万。
6. There are many mountains around here from east to west and in the north, there are rivers and plains in the middle part and northern part.
   这里北部从东到西有很多山脉。中部及北部其他地区是平原和河流。
7. Taiyuan's main topography is mountainous, the plain only occupies five percent of the area.
   太原的主要地形是山地,平原地区仅占地5%。
8. It is the continental climate in Temperate Zone.
   它是温带大陆性气候。
9. The annual precipitation is 456 mm and the frost period can last 170 days.
   年降水456 mm、霜冻期长达170天。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

10. Taiyuan abounds in coal and irons mine resources.
太原盛产煤和铁矿资源。
11. There is manganese, copper, aluminum, plaster stone and sulphur, etc.
太原还产锰、铜、铝、硫磺、石膏石等。
12. In the fields of agriculture, there is wheat, rice, corn, cotton, oilseed, beet and vegetables.
在农业领域，太原有小麦、水稻、玉米、棉花、油料、甜菜和蔬菜。
13. Jin Temple, Shengmu Palace, Chongshan Temple and Shuangta Temple are well-known scenic spots and historical sites.
金庙、神木宫崇善庙、双塔寺都是著名名胜古迹。
14. The traditional specialties are lacquerware, Taiyuan jade carving, pared noodles.
传统特色有漆器、太原玉雕、还有刀削面。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

B 简介 rief Introduction

Taiyuan is the provincial capital of Shanxi Province. As a whole, Taiyuan covers an area of 7 thousand square kilometers and has a population of 2.67 million.

There are many mountains around here from east to west and in the north, there are rivers and plains in the middle part and northern part. Taiyuan's main topography is hilly, the plain only occupies five percent of the area. It is the continental climate in Temperate Zone. The annual precipitation is 456 mm and the black frost period can last 170 days. Taiyuan abounds in coal and irons mine resources. There is manganese, copper, aluminum, plaster stone and sulphur, etc.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

In the fields of industry, there is metallurgy, machinery, coal and chemical industry. Copper and iron industry is the important industrial base in China. It is one of the most important production centers in derrick equipment, mining machinery, steel rolling machinery, sulphuric acid, calcium superphosphate and careful chemical industry in China. Chinese coal mine mainly from Mineral Bureau of western mountain.

In the fields of agriculture, there is wheat, rice, corn, cotton, oilseed, beet and vegetables.

The railway, highway and aviation are convenient in Taiyuan.

Jin Temple, Shengmu Palace, Chongshan Temple and Shuangta Temple are well-known scenic spots and historical sites. The traditional specialties are lacquerware, Taiyuan jade carving, pared noodles.

Paragraph 2

History 历史

Taiyuan is an ancient city once known as "the Dragon City". It is the ancestral home of the Wang lineage (one of China's most common names). During the last few imperial dynasties Shanxi was famous for its merchants and the early banks (piaohao) that made their trade so successful and profitable.

Paragraph 3

Taiyuan Today 太原的今天

Taiyuan is the capital of Shanxi Province in the north-central part of China, with a population of around 2 million. Shanxi is the largest producer of coal in China, accounting for one third of total coal production in the country. Shanxi also has large iron ore reserves. Taiyuan is a major heavy industrial center of China. Its industries include coal mining, iron and steel production, chemical production, construction material, machinery production, electricity generation.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

In 1998, Taiyuan was designated as the first pilot city by NDRC (formerly SETC) and SEPA in the project of "Promotion of Cleaner Production Demonstrative Provinces and Cities". Since then, Taiyuan has actively led in this field, by adjusting its economic structures, by its "blue sky and clear water" initiative, by hosting conferences and by a number of CP demonstration projects in its many industrial enterprises.

During the year 2000, Taiyuan became the first Chinese city to introduce cleaner production regulations to guide investment in that city. These regulations provide a framework for Taiyuan to carry out cleaner production, and also provide a model for other provinces and cities.

Paragraph 4

E 经济 conomy

The GDP per capita was 12 821 Yuan (US $1 550) in 2003, ranked No. 171 among 659 Chinese cities. In 2005, Taiyuan's nominal GDP was 89.55 billion Yuan, a growth of 14.7% from the previous year. It is increased 8% in the year of 2006. Taiyuan's primary, secondary, and tertiary industries were worth 2 billion Yuan, 43.07 billion Yuan, and 44.48 billion Yuan respectively. There are several big companies are in city of Taiyuan.

Today, Taiyuan is one of China's most important industrial capitals. An important transportation hub, Taiyuan lies within easy reach of Beijing by rail and highway, and provides an important link to destinations further west and south. Lying relatively near the inland stretches of the Bohai Sea, important ports such as Qingdao and Tianjin are also more accessible to Taiyuan than many other interior capitals.

Taiyuan differs little on the surface from other inland cities-the same massive redevelopment trend, shopping streets and office building developments.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 5

交流与交通 Communication and Transportation

Taiyuan is one of the traffic hubs of North China, with more than 50 domestic flight routes and flights at least every week to and from Beijing, Shanghai, Guangzhou, and other large cities in China. Passengers can also go from Taiyuan to almost every corner of China by train. The city has eight national highways and four expressways, and the Taiyuan-Jiuguan Expressway shortens the trip between Taiyuan and Beijing to five hours.

Taiyuan enjoys convenient communications facilities. Telephone users in Taiyuan can direct-dial every cities in China and in 260 countries and regions around the world. Taiyuan has cooperated with 30 countries including the United States, England, France, and Japan to develop international express delivery services.

The roads in urban Taiyuan total 1 243 kilometers, and the city has 1 350 buses and 8 300 taxis. The public supplies of tap water and liquefied gas cover more than 90 percent of the total area of Taiyuan, and the public heating supply covers 55. 2 percent. There are over 20 parks in urban Taiyuan. The lawn space comes to 5. 73 square meters per person, and 24 percent of the city is covered with vegetation.

Paragraph 6

森林公园 The Forest Park

The forest park in northwestern Taiyuan is in reconstruction now. It integrates ecological protection, scientific education, sightseeing, and recreation and is Shanxi Province's largest artificial forest park, covering an area of two square kilometers. The park is famous for its wild animals, beautiful landscapes. and abundant forest plants. It has a standard golf course, a forest holiday village, and a well-equipped recreation club. These newly established scenic spots, along with Taiyuan's older ecological and tourist

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

resources and cultural resorts, beautify the city and showcase the city's charming. In recent years, Taiyuan has developed new tourist attractions with local flavor by taking advantage of its brilliant historical culture and unique geographic location and optimizing its present resources following the principle of Overall Development with Emphasis on Several Aspects to Seek Further Progress. Tourism here has seen a rapid development and has become a bright point in the city's economic and social progress.

Paragraph 7

Foods in Taiyuan 太原小吃

The most famous flavors in Taiyuan are its varieties of wheat-flour foods and all kinds of Muslim foods. The Daoxiaomian (shaved noodles), shaped like willow tree leaves, similar in size, are regarded as "the best of its kind in the world" in terms of its making techniques and its flavor. Wheat-flour, can be found in many parts of China but the Shaomai in Taiyuan are different perhaps because of its taste. Mutton stuffing Shaomai served in the famous old restaurant "Qing Heyuan" are well-known all over Shanxin for being especially fresh and delicious. Besides shaved noodles and Shaomai, various kinds of wheat-flour foods like, cat's ear, fish-shaped noodles, mashi, steamed dumplings, Shuan Yang Rou (instant boiled mutton in a hotpot) and Tounao (made of mutton, Chinese yam and lotus root, therefore, called Brain) are the most famous flavors in Taiyuan.

Other famous local products are: Laochencu (Long-preserved Vinegar), Fenjiu (Fen Liquor) and Zhuyeqing (Liquor).

Cultural Links
文化链接

太原面食

太原面食品种繁多，历史悠久，制作方法独特，浇头菜码考究，主要品

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

种有大拉面、刀削面、刀拨面、剔尖、擀面、拨面、揪片、猫耳朵、擦面、河漏等十大面食。

拉面：又称大拉面，用手拉面，柔软、筋道、耐嚼，配以三鲜打卤，荤素打卤，别具风味，晋中以平定县的拉面最著名。

刀削面：用刀削面，制作简单，做法独特，形如柳叶，成熟快，吃着筋软利口，配以各种荤素浇头、打卤或烹炒食用俱佳。

刀拨面：用两头带把的刀拨面，面用冷水和制，面条三棱形，吃着筋软可口，不易粘连，浇入荤素浇头或炒着吃均可。

剔尖：用筷子沿盘边剔面。这种面食操作别致，筋软爽口，易于消化，配上大炒肉、炸酱、荤素打卤，别具一格。

猫耳朵：用手指将小面块按成猫耳朵形状，下在开水锅里煮熟，配上各种打卤、浇头，或炒着吃，这种面食形状美观，颇似猫耳朵，筋性强。

擦面：把和好的白面按在扁眼擦子上，从擦子漏下掉入开水锅里煮熟，配上各种浇头、打卤食用，这种面食易咀嚼、好消化，适于老年及牙齿不良的人食用。

揪片：面和好后，擀成片切成一寸多宽的条，用手一片一片揪入开水锅里（大小与手指头肚相同），煮熟后配上各种浇头食用。这种面食做法简单，吃着筋滑，适于青壮年吃。

河漏：把和好的面按入特制的河漏床（中间有圆洞，下方有孔，上面有与圆洞直径相差略小的木柱圆形头伸入洞中挤压）迫使面从下方均匀的孔内下到锅里，整个河漏床用杠杆原理，横跨锅上。待面压到一定长度，用刀从下方把面条截断，煮熟后配上各种浇头或打卤食用。这种面，操作简便，速度快，适宜于集体食堂食用，吃着筋滑利口。

拨鱼：把和好很软的面放在一个带把面板上，一手端面板，一手用铁制筷子或木筷子一根一根往下拨入锅内，如小鱼在水里跳跃。这种面柔软绵滑，易于消化，配上荤素浇头或打卤即可食用。

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

coal mining 煤炭	chemical production 化工生产
iron and steel production 钢铁生产	construction material 建材

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

machinery production 机械
Shanxi Yingze Hotel 山西迎泽宾馆
Howard Johnson Plaza Hotel 山西大酒店
Oscar Grill 奥斯卡烤肉
Rose Cafe 名人苑
Jingsheng Hall 净圣厅
Third People's Hospital of Taiyuan 太原第三人民医院
Frist Affiliated Hospital of Shanxi Medical University 山西医科大学第一医院
Taiyuan Economic & Technological Development Zone 太原经济技术开发区
Taiyuan High-Tech Industrial Development Zone 太原高新科技技术开发区
Western Zhou 西周
topography 地形
mountainous 山地
continental climate 大陆性气候
Temperate Zone 温带

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

2 华东地区
East China

Unit 1 济南 Jinan

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Jinan is the capital of Shandong province.
   济南是山东省省会。
2. It has been famous primarily for its springs and Buddhist temples.
   它主要以泉水和佛寺而闻名。
3. It has a nickname of the city of springs.
   人们俗称它为“泉城”。
4. Jinan is 15km from the south shore of the Yellow River.
   济南市距离黄河南岸 15 公里。
5. It was named Jinan, meaning south of the Ji River.
   济南意思是济河之南。
6. The name has kept even though that river dried up centuries ago.
   济河早在几百年前就干涸,而名字依然保留着。
7. Jinan is at the junction of the Beijing-Shanghai and the Qingdao-Jinan railways.
   济南位于京沪铁路线和青济线的交汇处。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

8. Jinan is the hub of transport and communication network for Shandong province.
济南是山东交流与交通的枢纽。
9. Industry has kept a sustained and reasonable rapid development.
工业得到了持久稳步的发展。
10. The output of major agricultural products is increasing steadily.
主要农产品产量稳步增长。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

地理位置
Location within China

Jinan is located in the north-western part of Shandong province at 36° 40′ northern latitude and 116° 57′ east of Greenwich. Because its location falls within the warm temperate continental monsoon climate zone, Jinan has four distinct seasons. The city is dry and rainless in spring, hot and rainy in summer, crisp in autumn and dry and cold in winter. The average annual temperature is 14.2°C, and the annual rainfall is around 675 mm. January is the coldest and driest month, the monthly averages are—5.4°C for the daily minimum temperature, 3.6°C for the daily maximum temperature, and 6.6 mm for the rainfall. July is the warmest and wettest month, the corresponding numbers are 23.5°C, 32.6°C, and 190.9 mm.

Paragraph 2

历史
History

Jinan has been recognized by the State Council of China as a worthy cultural-historic city. The ancient site on which Jinan was erected was probably settled as early as the Shang Dynasty, 3 000 years ago. From its loca-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

tion, south of the ancient Ji River, comes Jinan's name, literally meaning South of Ji. Jinan slowly developed during the Zhou Dynasty; by the Jin Dynasty, Buddhism began to flourish in the area, and various temples were erected making Jinan the religious center of Shandong at the time. During the Northern Song Dynasty, Jinan became a prefecture and was called "The nation of literature and the place of wealth." Jinan being one of the biggest tax-collecting zones in the kingdom.

Jinan was home to China's oldest trademark bronze plate. This shows the fast industrial and commercial development in Jinan at the time. The "Two An's of Jinan" created a lot of famous poetry and literature during this period, and became famous representatives of China's literary elite. The city continued to develop throughout the Ming and Qing Dynasties, becoming one of the most important trading centers in its region of China by the late Qing.

Industrial development thrived before the Japanese Invasion of China in 1933, during the times of the Republic. The city was damaged during World War II and was later rebuilt to a large extent. Since Deng Xiaoping's reforms, Jinan has strived to develop into a modern metropolis. Trade has opened up and Jinan's former industrial strengths have resurfaced.

Paragraph 3

D 人口统计 emographics

Jinan's 2006 estimated population is 5.75 million in the whole city-jurisdiction area, with a total of 2.54 million living in urban areas. The population is predominantly Han (98.3%), with very small portions of Hui and Manchu Chinese.

Paragraph 4

L 语言和文化 anguage and culture

Jinan is known for its Lu Cai, one stream out of the eight in China,

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

sometimes hailed as China's No. 1 Cuisine, but is sometimes considered salty and oily by westerners.

People in Jinan like eating big, raw green onion, garlic, which minced are also common seasonings in the Lu Cai.

Local residents in the city proper, as well as the surrounding area, have traditionally spoken a dialect that is relatively similar (as compared to southern dialects) to standard Mandarin Chinese, although a non-native speaker would likely find it difficult to understand. The people of Jinan are gradually speaking more Mandarin, although many elder residents still have strong Shandong dialect elements in their speech.

Paragraph 5

Transport 交通

Jinan is the hub of transport and communication network for Shandong province. The construction of the Jinan-Qingdao Expressway, the Jinan-Wangcun, Jinan-Weishan, Jinan-Handan and Jinan-Dezhou highway has formed a network connecting Jinan with the rest of the province and the country as a whole. Jinan Airport provides airline access to all of China, with more than 30 routes including to Beijing, Shanghai, Shenzhen, Fuzhou and other major Chines cities. It continues as a major crossroad for the Chinese railway system, as it is in the middle of the Jing-Hu Railway and at the end of the Jiao-Ji Railway. Water travel on the Yellow River makes Jinan an important shipping center.

Paragraph 6

Industry 工业

Industry has kept a sustained and reasonable rapid development. In 2005, the increase value is 73.4 billion Yuan, an increase of 19.3% compared with 2004. The sales income of large-scale industrial enterprises amounts to 207.56 billion Yuan, an increase of 27.3%; investment in indus-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

trial fixed assets is 35.23 billion Yuan, an increase of 35.2%; large-scale industrial enterprises amount to 1714, 202 more than last year and 303 of those enterprises have an income of more than 100 million, 71 more than those of 2004. The major products have kept on increasing. 124 of the 219 principal industrial products have increased which make up 55.6%. The production of steel has topped 10 million tons.

Pillar industries and large-scale enterprises have played a more important role. In 2006, those three traditional industries as black metal smelting, traffic equipment production and petrol processing total a sales income of 84.5 billion Yuan, occupying 40.5% of that of the large-scale industries, an increase of 1.9%; profits and profits tax account for more than 30% of those of all the large-scale industries. 303 enterprises have a sales income of more than 100 million Yuan and the total sales income is 162.7 billion Yuan, an increase of 28.3% which is 1% higher than the average level of the city. Jinan Iron and Steel Group Corporation, China National Heavy Duty Truck Group Co. Ltd, Jinan Branch of Sinopec Corp and Langchao Group all have an income of more than 10 billion which total 72.23 billion Yuan, an increase of 31.2%.

Paragraph 7

A 农业 griculture

Agricultural structure adjustment and industrialization process are developing fast. The sown area of crops is 623.6 kiloacres in 2006, an increase of 2.4% compared with 2004 including 438.5 kiloacres of grain, an increase of 4.9%; 120.7 kiloacres of vegetables, an increase of 0.1%; 16.2 kiloacreas of oil crops, an increase of 3.1%; 30.3 kiloacreas of cotton, a decrease of 16%. There are 1 058 livestock farms, 80 more than the number of last year. There are 21 000 large-scale feeders, an increase of 12.1%. There are 170 major agricultural enterprises, each of which has an annual sales income of more than 5 million Yuan, 19 more than that of 2004. There are 2 enterprises at the national level, 16 at the provincial level

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

and 41 at the city level. 20 enterprises have an income of more than 100 million.

The output of major agricultural products is increasing steadily. The total crops production amounts to 2.601 million tons which is the highest in the past 5 years. The per unit area yield of crops is 5 932 kg. per acre; vegetables total 7 million tons; meat, egg and milk are an all-time high.

Paragraph 8

第三产业
Tertiary Industry

In 2005, the increase value of modern service industry is 35.8 billion Yuan, an increase of 13% which makes up 40.7% of that of the tertiary industry.

The software industry has a sales income of 9.5 billion Yuan, an increase of 21.8%. By the end of 2005, the fixed telephones are 43.9 per 100 persons, an increase of 2%; the mobile phones are 44 per 100 persons, an increase of 10.9%.

The real estate industry has a steady development. The increase value is 6.09 billion Yuan, an increase of 6%. The investment in real estate is 12.11 billion Yuan, an increase of 9.9% including 9.62 billion Yuan of investment in residential buildings, an increase of 10.1% which occupies 79.4% of the total investment in real estate.

Tourism industry is developing well. There are 14.633 million person-times both at home and abroad, an increase of 20.1% including 120 000 person-times from abroad, an increase of 12.7%. The total income is 12.21 billion Yuan, an increase of 29.8%. By the year of 2006, Jinan has 32 two-star hotels, 24 three-star hotels, 15 four-star hotels and 3 five-star hotels with 8 737 rooms, 17 053 beds and 21 681 dining seats.

The exhibition industry is growing fast. 96 exhibitions are held. The direct income is 176 million Yuan which registers a 270% increase compared with 2004. The Sugar and Wine Fair was held in Jinan for the first time which had a direct income of 100 million and the industries correlated with

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

the fair increased their income by 910 million Yuan.

Paragraph 9

固定资产投资额
Investment in Fixed Assets

The scale of investment in fixed assets is expanding. The total investment in fixed assets is 85.69 billion Yuan, an increase of 31.6%.

The investment in industry, education and social affairs has increased dramatically. The investment in industrial fixed assets is 35.23 billion Yuan, an increase of 35.2%; the investment in education and social welfare is 7.89 billion Yuan and 80 million Yuan respectively, an increase of 96.8% and 95%; the investment in resident service and other service industries is 170 million Yuan, an increase of 70.4%.

The proportion of non-state investment is increasing. The non-state owned economic sectors have an investment of 35.88 billion Yuan, an increase of 46.3%. It accounts for 41.9% of the total social investment in fixed assets, an increase of 4.3%.

Paragraph 10

外资及友好往来
Foreign Economy and Friendly Exchanges

Foreign trade keeps on developing. The exports and imports amount to 3.762 billion US dollars, an increase of 23.5% compared with last year. The exports amount to 1.778 billion US dollars, an increase of 29.5%.

Foreign investment is increasing. 148 foreign investment projects are ratified. The contract foreign investment is 1.121 billion US dollars, an increase of 63.6%; the practically used foreign investment is 510 million US dollars, an increase of 60.7% which includes 351 million US dollars of direct foreign investment, an increase of 91.9%.

Foreign economic and technological cooperation has made new progress. Foreign contracts reach 230 million US dollars, an increase of 10.7% and the turnover is 320 million US dollars, an increase of 23.5%.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Jinan has established sister-city relations with 12 foreign cities, including Wakayama and Yamaguchi of Japan, Coventry of the United Kingdom, Sacramento of the United States, Regina of Canada, capital area of Papua New Guinea, Suwon of South Korea, Nizhny Novgrod of Russia, Wanda of Finland, Rennes of France, Augsburg of Germany and Joondalup of Australia. International exchanges and cooperation are expanding year by year. Universities as well as elementary and secondary schools in Jinan have also established friendly relations with their counterparts in her foreign sister-cities.



济南市

济南市位于京沪、胶济铁路交汇处，黄河下游南岸。山东省省会，全省政治、经济、文化、交通中心。现辖章丘市和长清、平阴、济阳、商河四县。春秋战国时为齐国的历下邑，晋为济南郡，宋及明清为济南府治。我国历史文化名城之一。因市内有名泉72眼，故称“泉城”。

济南市工业以冶金、机械、汽车、化工、纺织、电子等为主要门类。济南又是一座历史悠久，风景秀美的城市。市内和郊区有很多名胜古迹。主要有趵突泉、大明湖、千佛山、灵岩寺、柳埠古迹（四门塔、龙虎塔、千佛岩等）及齐国都城遗址等。另外山东省博物馆收藏文物较多，值得一看。



Baotu Spring 趵突泉	贵和皇冠假日酒店
Black Tiger Spring 黑虎泉	Longdu International Hotel
Golden Ox Park 金牛公园	龙都国际大酒店
Liberation Pavilion 解放阁	Taohuayuan 桃花源美食城
Liubu Historical Site 柳埠古迹	Jinan Restaurant 济南菜馆
Crown Plaza Jinan	Eurasian Garden 欧亚花园西餐厅

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Mediterranean 地中海咖啡厅
Aliya Korea 柯丽亚韩国餐厅
Western Restuarant 西餐厅
Jinan Hospital 济南医院
Shangdong College Second Hospital
山东大学第二医院
Jinan High-Tech Industrial Development Zone
济南高新技术产业开发区
city of spring 泉城
Yellow River 黄河
Beijing-Shanghai railway 京沪铁路
Qingdao-Jinan line 济青线

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 2 南京 Nanjing

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. In 229, Sun Quan, one of the three heroes in China's Three Kingdoms Period (220—280), to strengthen his influence in the middle valley of the Yangtze River, moved the capital of his kingdom to Jianye—present Nanjing.
   中国三国时期(220—280)的孙权为了巩固他在长江流域中游的势力,公元229年他将都城迁到建业,即现在的南京。
2. From that time on, the city served as the capital for several dynasties in China's history.
   从那时候起,这所城市便成为我国历史上多个朝代的首都。
3. Zhonghua Gate, simply meaning Chinese Gate, is a noted attraction for tourists in the present city center.
   中华门,意思是"中国大门",是现在市中心吸引游客的一个著名景点。
4. In spite of its glorious times, the city also witnessed the hardest moment of this nation.
   尽管有繁盛时期,却也见证了这个国家艰难的时刻.
5. Following this treaty, invasions and colonial rule of the western countries intensified and China sank into a harder and darker time.
   这项条约后,西方国家加紧了侵略进程,中国从此陷入了更加黑暗的时期。
6. Today, a memorial hall in the Mausoleum of Dr. Sun Yat-Sen, houses a statue of Dr. Sun sculpted out of white marble.
   今天,在中山陵的纪念堂里伫立着一尊孙中山的白色大理石像。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

7. Also, in 1937, the inhuman Nanjing Massacre happened.
另外,1937 年发生了惨无人道的南京大屠杀。
8. In addition to historical sights, memorials, museums and cultural sights also attract thousands of travelers.
除了历史景点和纪念馆外,博物馆和文化景点也吸引了成千上万的观光客。
9. The observatory on Zijinshan Mountain to the east of the city center was the first modern observatory built in China.
城市东郊的紫金山天文台是我国第一个现代天文台。
10. Transport in the city is very convenient with the new metro service in addition to taxis, public buses, tourist special lines and other means of transport.
全市交通十分便捷,除了的士、公共汽车、旅游专线还有地铁等其他新增的交通工具。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

B 简介 rief Introduction

Lying on the south bank of the Yangtze River, Nanjing, the capital of Jiangsu province, is one of the most delightful of Chinese cities. Known as the capital city of six Dynasties in China's history, it has a brilliant cultural heritage.

Just over three hours from Shanghai by train, Nanjing, literally "Southern Capital" has long been celebrated as a literary and political center and served as capital during the early years of the Ming dynasty. The Treaty of Nanjing, signed in 1842 at the conclusion of the First Opium War, opened China to Foreign trade. In 1853, the city became the short-lived capital and power bass of the Taiping rebellion. In the early part of the 20th century,

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Nanjing served as capital of the Republic of China. In late 1937, the Japanese entered the city, and embarked on a campaign of widespread slaughter, which became known as the "Rape of Nanjing." Chinese forces reoccupied the city in 1945, which fell to the Communists in April 1949, becoming the provincial capital of Jiangsu.

Paragraph 2

地理气候 Geography and climate

Nanjing, with a total area of 6 598 km, is situated in the largest economic zone of China, the Yangtze River Delta, which is part of the downstream Yangtze River drainage basin. Yangtze River flows past the west side of Nanjing city proper, while the Ningzheng Ridge surrounds the north, east and south side of the city. The city is 300 km from Shanghai, 1 200 km from Beijing, and 1 400 km from Chongqing.

Nanjing has a temperate climate, and is under the influence of East Asia Monsoon. Seasons are distinct in Nanjing, with usually hot summers and plenty of precipitation throughout the year. Along with Wuhan and Chongqing, Nanjing is often referred to as one of the "Three Furnaces" along the Yangtze River, due to the historically high temperature in summer. The average annual temperature is 15.7℃, with the highest recorded temperature being 43℃ (July 13, 1934) and the lowest—16.9 ℃ (Jan 6, 1955). On average it precipitates 117 days out of a year and the average annual precipitation is 1 106.5 mm. From mid-June to end of July is the Meiyu season, during which the city experiences a period of mild rain and dampness. According to the city government's website, the best weather of the year occurs from September to November.

Nanjing is endowed with rich natural resources, which include more than 40 kinds of minerals. Among them, iron and sulfur reserves take 40% of those of Jiangsu province; its reserves of Strontium rank first in East Asia and the South East Asia region. Nanjing also possesses ample water resources, both from the Yangtze River and ground water, and it has several

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

natural hot springs such as Tangshan Hot Spring in Jiangning and Tangquan Hot Spring in Pukou.

Surrounded by the Yangtze river and mountains, Nanjing also enjoys beautiful natural scenery. Natural lakes such as Xuanwu Lake and Mochou Lake are located in the center of the city and easily accessible to the public, while hills like Purple Mountain are covered with evergreens and host various historical and cultural sites.

Paragraph 3

History 历史

Yuecheng, the first recorded military defense constructed in early 472 BC, opened the long history of Nanjing. In the following years, the city reached its height of splendor at various times. In 229, Sun Quan, one of the three heroes in China's Three Kingdoms Period (220—280), to strengthen his influence in the middle valley of the Yangtze River, moved the capital of his kingdom to Jianye—present Nanjing. From that time on, the city served as the capital for several dynasties in China's history. In 1356, in a peasant rebellion, Zhu Yuanzhang, later the Emperor Taizu of the Ming Dynasty (1368—1644), conquered the city and renamed it Yingtian Fu. In 1368, Zhu established the Ming Dynasty—the last feudal dynasty ruled by the native Han people, and gave Yingtian Fu the new name of Nanjing. Ten years later, the emperor made Nanjing the capital of the country. The mausoleum of Emperor Zhu Yuanzhang is perching on the southern slope of the Mount Zijinshan in the northeastern part of the city.

Following officials' advice of "building walls and producing grain to consolidate the rule", the emperor ordered the construction of city walls. Today's majestic walls in Nanjing, the longest of its kind in the world, are the result of that phase of construction. Zhonghua Gate, simply meaning "Chinese Gate", is a noted attraction for tourists in the present city center.

In spite of its glorious times, the city also witnessed the hardest moment of this nation. In 1839, the Opium War burst out after Lin Zexu, an

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

assiduous official, burnt twenty thousand boxes of opium in Humen. On a battleship in Nanjing's Xiaguan, the corrupt Qing government, under threat by Britain troops, signed the notorious Nanjing Treaty, the first of the 'Unequal Treaties' which ceded Hong Kong away from China for more than hundred years. Following this treaty, invasions and colonial rule of the western countries intensified and China sank into a harder and darker time.

Peasant groups of Taiping rebelled against the Qing government in 1853 and established the Taiping Heavenly Kingdom in Jinling, Nanjing's name at that time, and formed an army. Unfortunately, the peasant regime was short-lived and in 1864, troops of Qing government won the city back. Nowadays, in Xuyuan Garden, one can still see part of the palace of Heavenly King of Taiping Heavenly Kingdom.

It was the Revolution of 1911, the Chinese bourgeois democratic revolution led by Dr. Sun Yat Sen that overthrew the Qing Dynasty. On the first day of 1912, Dr. Sun Yet Sen gave his simple but sublime address on the inauguration held of the new Republic of China. Today, a memorial hall in the Mausoleum of Dr. Sun Yat Sen, houses a statue of Dr. Sun sculpted out of white marble.

There are two further negative memories of the city. On April 18th, 1927, Chiang Kaishek launched the counter-revolutionary 4. 12 Coup and established his power in Nanjing. Also, in 1937, the inhuman Nanjing Massacre happened. In six weeks, more than 300 000 Chinese people were killed including women and children. No atrocity can go unpunished. After eight years of resistance, in 1945 the brave Chinese people eventually drove the barbarous Japanese invaders out of China's homeland and the war criminals got what they deserved. However Chinese people will never forget the history. Pictures of the atrocities of Japanese soldiers taken by Japanese army photographers are exhibited in the Memorial Hall to the Victims in the Nanjing Massacre.

Finally, on April 23rd, 1949, Nanjing was liberated by the People's Liberation Army and Kuomintang's power in China was ended.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 4

C 文化名城 ultural City

In addition to historical sights, memorials, museums and cultural sights also attract thousands of travelers. The famous Confucius Temple (Fuzimiao) is not only a memorial place for the Great Sage in China but has a surrounding area bustling with shops, restaurants and a snack street housed in traditional Chinese architectural buildings. In the city center, Nanjing Museum is a must for travelers with a collection of more than 420 thousand pieces, including about 2 000 that are rare and valued. The observatory on Zijinshan Mountain to the east of the city center was the first modern observatory built in China.

Qin Huai River, in the southwest of the city, extends one hundred kilometers. The river used to be the most flourishing part of Nanjing in the old days. In many Chinese novels, it is renowned as a place which nurtured beauties and romance. Today, it is a place for people to recall the old splendor of this historical city. Like all sights in Nanjing, it tells the story of past, present and future of the city.

Paragraph 5

M 现代都市 odern Metropolis

Like most major cities in China, Nanjing is developing rapidly. Great changes have taken place in the city. Modern highways and railways connect the city with most major cities throughout the country and it is becoming a sparkling metropolis akin to Shanghai and Beijing with skyscrapers, luxury hotels, fashion shopping malls, supermarkets and highly-developed economic zones throughout the city. Transport in the city is very convenient with the new metro service in addition to taxis, public buses, tourist special lines and other means of transport. Modern amenities in luxury hotels make your trip a comfortable one. Dazzling shopping malls and department stores

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

can be found in the commercial areas of the city with stocked plenty of international brand names. Nanjing is also home to several colleges and universities and a large foreign population. The city is become an international metropolis with new faces every day.

Paragraph 6

Snack Streets 小吃街

Fuzimiao Street (Gongyuan Street)

Most travelers find local delicacies in Nanjing irresistible. Gongyuan Street on the northern bank of the famous Qin Huai River (usually called Fuzimiao Street by locals) is the most bustling tour site in the city. It is one of China's Four Famed Streets—the others being Wangfujing in Beijing, Xuanmiaoguan Street in Suzhou and Nanjing Road in Shanghai. You can sample various snacks, from the reputed Salted Soup Duck to Chinese dumplings in dozens of restaurants, stalls and shops on the street. The most famous snacks include spicy Gan Si, eggs boiled in tea, fried pancakes, duck blood soups, beef soup, dumplings and others. Famous restaurants include Wanqing Tower, Kuiguangge, Lao Zhengxing and Liu Feng Ju. You can take Bus 1, 7, 31, 40 and 301 or the special tourist lines of No. 2 or 4 and get off at Fuzimiao stop. An alternative could be choosing Bus 2, 4, 16, 33, 44 and 49 and get off at Changle Lu.

Hunan Lu Dinning & Shopping Street

Located in the northwestern part of the city in Gulou District (Drum Tower District), this one kilometers long street is one of the most prosperous shopping streets in Nanjing with the famous Shiziqiao Food Street in the middle. This pedestrianised street is filled with dozens of restaurants providing both Chinese and western-style food. The street is divided into three parts. The first part has restaurants providing typical local cuisine, among which Shiwangfu Restaurant is the best. The second part is called Chinese Food Street where various cuisines from different parts of China are found and the last, but not least, is the area which has food from Japan, Korea,

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

India, Thailand and the west.

This street is a warm, lively place for local people who spend evenings there with friends. An annual flavored food festival is held to attract tourists.

Hanfu Street

Hanfu Street, opposite Nanjing Presidential Hall, is the latest food street to be developed and has restaurants run by people from other cities in China. They cover all kinds of food from throughout the country including spicy Sichuan cuisine, ethnic Guizhou food, folk dishes of Northeast China and Shanghai cuisine.

Paragraph 7

E 经济发展 conomy Development

Since the Three Kingdoms period, Nanjing has become an industrial center for textile and mint due to its strategic geographic location and convenient transportation. During Ming Dynasty Nanjing's industry was further expanded, and the city became one of the most prosperous cities in China and even the world. It led in textile, mint, printing, shipbuilding and many other industries, and was the busiest business center in the Far East region.

Into the first half of the 20th century, Nanjing has gradually shifted from a production hub into a heavy consumption city, mainly because of the rapid expansion of wealthy population after Nanjing once again regained the political spotlight of China. A number of huge department stores such as Zhongyang Shangchang sprouted, attracting merchants all over China to sell their products in Nanjing. In 1933, the revenue generated by food and entertainment industry in the city has exceeded the sum of the output of manufacturing and agriculture industry. One third of the city population worked in the service industry, while prostitution, drugs and gambling also thrived.

In 1950s, the CPC invested heavily in Nanjing to build a series of state-owned heavy industries, as part of the national plan of rapid industrialization. Electrical, mechanical, chemical and steel factories were established

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

successively, converting Nanjing into a heavy industry production center of East China. Over-enthusiastic in building a "world-class" industrial city, leaders of Nanjing also made many disastrous mistakes during the development, such as spending hundreds of millions of Yuan to mine for non-existent coal, resulting in the negative economic growth in the late 1960s.

Paragraph 8

南京的今天
Nanjing Today

The current industry of the city basically inherited the characteristics of the 1960s, with electronics, cars, petrochemical, iron and steel, and power as the "Five Pillar Industries". Some representative big state-owned firms are Panda Electronics, Jincheng Motors and Nanjing Steel. The tertiary industry also regained prominence, counting for 44% of the GDP of the city. The city is also vying for foreign investment against neighboring cities in Yangtze River Delta, and so far a number of famous multinational firms, such as FIAT, IVECO, A. O. Smith and Sharp, have established their lines there. After China's entry into WTO, Nanjing has received increasing attention from foreign investors, and on average, two new foreign firms establish offices in the city everyday.

The city government is further improving the investing desirability of the city by building large industrial parks, which now totals to five: Gaoxin, Xingang, Huagong and Jiangning. Despite the effort, Nanjing is still falling behind other neighboring cities such as Wuxi, Suzhou and Hangzhou, which have an edge in attracting foreign investment and local innovation. In addition, the traditional state-owned enterprises find themselves incapable of competing with efficient multinational firms, and hence are either mired in heavy debt or forced into bankruptcy or privatization. This resulted in large number of layoff workers who are technically not unemployed but effectively jobless.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 9

交通与交流
Transportation and Communication

Five means of transportation such as railway, waterway, air transport and piping constitute a three-dimensional and mass transport volume traffic network in an all-round way. Nanjing Port is a port for foreign trade leading to the ocean. The port area is 98 kilometres in full length and has 64 berths including 16 berths for ships with a tonnage of more than 10 000. Within the boundary of Nanjing, there are over 60 highway long-distance passenger traffic lines leading to all parts of the province; the Tianjin-Pukou, Shanghai-Nanjing and Nanjing-Wuhu Trunk Railways meet in Nanjing which has become an important hub of railways linking north China, east China with central China. After extension, the Nanjing Airport has more than 20 air lines leading to all major cities in the country. With the start of construction of the new airport, Nanjing will have an international modernized airport. Being one of six major telecommunication hubs in the country, Nanjing has a telecommunication network which is composed of multiple modes and linking with all parts of the country and all countries in the world.

Paragraph 10

夜生活
Nightlife

Traditionally Nanjing's nightlife was mostly centered around Fuzi Miao area along the Qinhuai River, where night markets, restaurants and pubs thrived, and boating at night on the river was a main attraction of the city. The area was also famous (or infamous) for the high concentration of upper-class prostitutes, many of them patronized by high-ranking government officials and wealthy businessmen. The prostitution was banned after CPC took over Nanjing.

In recent years, several commercial streets have been developed by the city and the night life has become more diverse: there are mega-shop-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

ping malls opening late in the Xinjiekou CBD and Hunan Road, and the newly-opened "Nanjing 1912" district hosts a wide variety of pastime facilities ranging from traditional restaurants to western pubs.

Cultural Links
文化链接

龙蟠虎踞

南京城内的石头山可以说是风水中的吉山，因为它的状貌形同一只两脚前拱伏蹲地上的老虎，古人把这种山称作虎踞或伏虎。

实际上"龙蟠虎踞"的说法来自诸葛孔明。公元208年，长江北岸的船队舳舻相接，彩色的战旗辉映着滚滚的波涛，横槊赋诗的大枭雄曹操带领他的千军万马轻取荆州，把卖草鞋出身的皇叔刘备追赶得鸡飞狗跳。在秋天皓白的芦苇掩护下，诸葛孔明受刘备之托驾舟来到东吴，准备联合孙权组成联军共同抗击曹操。于是在罗贯中的生花妙笔下，《三国演义》里"舌战群儒"、"草船借箭"、"巧借东风"等一幕幕精彩纷呈的故事便产生了。在东吴期间，诸葛孔明骑马在石头山上观察南京的地理局势，他见此地山水交合，天地间灵气氤氲，不禁赞叹道："钟山龙蟠，石头虎踞，真乃帝王之宅也。"回去后，于谈笑间力劝孙权建都此地。

"生子当如孙仲谋"的孙权是第一个把都城建在南京的帝王。有一次有人在山上挖到一只二尺七寸长的铜匣子，里面有一只长形白玉如意，手柄处刻了许多龙虎及蝉形图案，孙权看过后不知道这东西是干什么用的，就派人去问精通风水的胡综，胡综说，当年由于金陵有天子气，所以秦始皇派人挖断了城周围的几座山，并在其他山上埋了许多宝物来镇压王气，以达到厌胜的目的，这东西大概就是那时留下的。风水中的厌胜，就是用金器、铁器、玉器建塔、埋腊鹅、堆土山等多种方法来镇住地气，使它难以同人发生感应。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

Nanjing University 南京大学
Nanjing University of Science & Technology 南京理工大学
Nanjing University of Aeronautics and Astronautics 南京航空航天大学
Nanjing University of Technology 南京工业大学
Nanjing Forestry University 南京林业大学
Nanjing University of Traditional Chinese Medicine 南京中医药大学
Nanjing University of Finance & Economics 南京财经大学
Nanjing University of Posts and Telecommunications 南京邮电大学
Nanjing Institute of Meteorology 南京气象学院
Nanjing Institute of Physical Education 南京体育学院
Nanjing Arts Institute 南京艺术学院
Nanjing Audit University 南京审计学院
Nanjing Xiaozhuang College 南京晓庄学院
Jinling Institute of Technology 金陵科技学院
Lake Bailu Zhou Park 白鹭洲公园
Baima Park (White Horse Park) 白马公园
Hongshan Zoological Park 红山动物园
Jiuhua Hill 九华山
Mochou Lake 莫愁湖
Purple Mountain Scenic Area 紫金山风景区
Qingliang Hill 清凉山
Qixia Hill 栖霞山
Xiuqiu Park 绣球公园
Xu Garden 徐园
Xuanwu Lake 玄武湖
Ulong Tan Park (Black Dragon Pond) 乌龙潭公园(苍龙池)
Yanzi Ji 燕子矶
Yuhua Tai 雨花台
Zhan Garden 詹园
Zhenzhu Spring Park (Pearl Spring Park) 珍珠春园
Zheng He Park 郑和公园

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 3 苏州 Suzhou

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. The Humble Administrator's Garden is a masterpiece among Chinese gardens.
   拙政园是中国园林的经典之作。
2. The gardens bring together the beauties of nature, architecture and painting.
   园林集自然美、建筑美和绘画美于一体。
3. Suzhou is famous for its fans.
   苏州以生产扇子而闻名。
4. Suzhou embroidery is famous for its delicate workmanship, beautiful designs and tasteful colors.
   苏绣以精致的工艺、漂亮的设计和雅致的色彩而举世闻名。
5. Most of the traveller were Lion Grove struck by the gardens' ingenious architecture and their exotic layout in Suzhou.
   游人大都会被苏州园林的独创性建筑风格和奇异的布局所吸引。
6. Lion Grove is a famous garden in Suzhou.
   狮子林是苏州一个有名的园林。
7. It was built in Yuan Dynasty. It was a private garden.
   狮子林建于元代，是一个私家园林。
8. Chinese gardens can be catalogued into two kinds: private gardens and the loyal gardens.
   中国园林可分为两种：私家园林和皇家园林。
9. The private garden is small and charming, some unique, but the loyal garden is magnificent, usually hills and rivers or lakes being functioned.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

私家园林小而幽雅，有的也很奇特，而皇家园林很宏大，有时就用真山真河真湖作为一个景点。

10. Look at these stones. Seems millions, right? They are Tai Hu stones and shaped like lions having been positioned. So in Chinese, Shi Zi Lin means the Forest of Lions.
看这些石头，多得不计其数吧？它们是太湖石，这些石头林立在园林中，像狮子一样，在汉语中，狮子林就是狮子组成的森林之意。

11. Suzhou urban population is approximately 2.17 million.
苏州市区人口约为217余万。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

B简介 Brief Introduction

Suzhou is located in the center of the Yangtze Delta, in the south of Jiangsu Province, with Shanghai to the east, Zhejiang Province to the south, Wuxi City to the west and the Yangtze River to the north. Since 42% area of the city is covered by water, including a vast number of ponds and streams, Suzhou is praised as the "Oriental Venice". Taihu Lake, four fifths of which is in the territory of Suzhou, is one of the four largest fresh lakes in China, with East Hill, West Hill and other scenic spots in its vicinity. The city is cut by the Beijing-Hangzhou Grand Canal from north to south. Together with its mild climate, making it an available destination all year round, fertile landscape and abundance of produce, it is no wonder that Suzhou is called "paradise on earth".

Built in 514 BC, Suzhou is an ancient city with a 2 500 years' history. The unique characteristics of the past are still retained in present-day Suzhou. The double-chessboard layout of Suzhou, with "the streets and rivers go side by side while the water and land routes run in parallel", are

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

preserved basically intact. Strolling the streets, you can feel the unique lingering charm of this landscape left by its long history.

As the saying goes—"Gardens to the south of Yangtze River are the best in the world, and Suzhou gardens are the best among them". These gardens attain their high reputation not only for their vast numbers, but also for their charming natural beauty and harmonious construction. At present more than 60 gardens are kept intact in Suzhou, and a series of them have been listed in the World Heritage List, including the Humble Administrator's Garden, the Lingering Garden, the Garden of Master of Nets and the Mountain Villa with Embracing Beauty.

Paragraph 2

A 农业 griculture

The whole city should center on the work of "developing agriculture and making farmers rich and booming the countryside". Guidance on agricultural science, technology and information as well as market orientation should be strengthened. The output of agriculture, forest, fishery and animal husbandry was 13.695 billion Yuan. The restructuring of agriculture continued. The ratio between cereals and cash crops changed to 51.7:48.3 from 55 :45. Five pillar sectors of agriculture have been formed, which were crops, vegetable, fruit, aquatic products and animal husbandry. Agricultural standardization was in full swing and the quality of agricultural products have been continuously improved. 272 bases of environmental-friendly products have been certified and 427 brands of environmental-friendly products, green food and organic food have passed national and provincial certification. The approval system of agricultural market entrance has been carried out.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 3

工业
Industry

Suzhou Iron and Steel Group, an Extra Large Enterprise of China. In 2006 Suzhou 's industrial output was 800 billion Yuan, among which 565. 651 billion Yuan was the output of state-owned enterprises (SOEs) and non-SOEs whose annual sales volume is over 5 million Yuan. The figures increased 37.8% and 39.1% respectively compared with those of the previous year. The city's total power consumption by industrial sectors in 2006 was 30.413 billion kwh, an increase of 30% over the previous year. The level of heavy industrialization reached 64.5% ,up by 9.1% . The operation quality of industrial economy has been further enhanced. The sales volume of above-scale enterprises reached 492. 487 billion Yuan, increasing 41.4% . Their revenue reached 33.265 billion Yuan, up by 35.8% . Their profit was 21.449 billion Yuan, up by 35.8% . The comprehensive index of economic performance of above-scale industries reached 159.3% , a record high in recent years. The sales volume of 100 biggest enterprises was 252.4 billion Yuan and their revenue was 18 billion Yuan, up by 56.2% and 38.8% respectively.

Paragraph 4

交通与交流
Transportation and Communication

By the end of 2006 the number of motor vehicles was 1.1369 million, among which the number of cars was 286 000, increasing 13.7% and 36.2% respectively. The passenger transportation volume of 2003 was 229 million person-times and 15.181 billion person-kilometers, up by 9.1% and 26.6% . The totalcargo transportation volume was 69.5 million tons and 4.147 billion ton-kilometers.

Revenue from the post sector totaled 669 million Yuan, an increase of 5.5% over the previous year. The number of letters and documents sent

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

through post offices in 2006 was 114.10 million and the number of express delivery was 2.65 million. The number of newspapers distributed was 249 million. By the end of 2003 the balance of deposit accounts in the city's post offices totaled 8.703 billion Yuan, up by 19.5% over the previous year. The city's telephone exchange capacity was 297 470 000 lines with 280 010 000 fixed telephone subscribers, up by 28.0%. Among them 217 090 000 were home sets. The number of the subscribers of wireless local calls (smart phones) was 504 700 and that of mobile phones reached 359 210 000. For every hundred citizens in the city, there were 139.7 telephones, an increase of 26 sets over the previous year. Internet users reached 600 000.

Paragraph 5

D 国民经济 omestic Trade

The city's total commercial turnover was 52.61 billion Yuan, up by 16.5% over the previous year. Among it the whole-saling and retail volume was 43.832 billion Yuan and the turnover of catering industry was 8.52 billion Yuan, increasing by 15.6% and 26.9% respectively. The total retail value in the city was 37.21 billion Yuan and that in the countryside was 15.4 billion Yuan, up by 17.3% and 14.5% respectively. As new selling methods including shopping malls, supermarkets and convenience stores become standardized and their scales grow bigger, the restructuring of department stores and franchised shops have been quickened and the city's commerce is taking a new shape of winning by scales and competing through own advantages. The application of information technology on the purchasing, sales, settlement, warehousing, distribution, stock management facilitated the informationalization of the city's commerce. The on-line purchasing and sales made new progress.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 6

T旅游业 ourism

The revenue from the tourism sector totaled 28. 596 billion Yuan in 2006, up by 19% over the previous year. The city received 815 700 overseas tourists, a decrease of 8. 5%. The income from these overseas tourists was 291 million USD, up by 4. 5%. The number of domestic tourists was 23. 5017 million, increasing 16. 9%. Through tourist agencies 693 400 Suzhounese visited other places, which increased 13. 6%. The city carried out the strategy of "Grand Tourism" further perfecting its famous tourism brands of "Three ancient towns and one lake" It also developed new tourist attractions such as "Tour around the city's ancient canal" and "Dreaming Suzhou "a large-scale performance of ballet and acrobatics. By the end of 2006 there were 95 star hotels in the city, 5 more than that in the previous year. 20 of them were 4 or 5 star ones and total beds provided by these star hotels were over 20 000. The standardization of tourist sites was in full swing and 13 scenery places were listed as 4A class.

Paragraph 7

S科学技术 cience and Technology

The strategy of revitalizing the city by science and technology has been adopted. Target is set to build Suzhou into an international new science and technology city, so the whole region's science and technology level will be upgraded. Science and technology contributes 49. 7% and 57. 1% to the economic growth of industry and agriculture. New and hi-tech industries output value reaches 186 billion Yuan, with an increase of 65. 5%, occupying 37. 4% of scaled industry. Among them, the output value of telecommunication equipment, computer and electronic equipment manufacture industry reaches 156. 6 billion Yuan, accounting for 84. 2% of all hi-tech industries. 224 new and hi-tech products above provincial level has been rec-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

ognized, with an accumulated number of 1 221. 80 new and hi-tech enterprises were set up with a total number of 555. More than 30 famous multinational companies established their research and development institutions. The enterprises have established 144 associations with 84 colleges. 43 800 talented persons with various skills are attracted to work in Suzhou. There are 3 780 patent applications received in the whole year and 2 593 are approved, an increase of 21.6% and 11.6% respectively compared with last year.

Paragraph 8

Culture 文化

The construction of the brand "Cultural Suzhou" has made great achievements. I. M. Pei, the world famous architect, made design for the new Suzhou Museum, which is now under construction. The comic show "One, Two, Three, Let's go" is elected at the first round as China 's Top Stage Show. Dancing opera, "Gan Jiang and Mo Ye" and youth comic "Young People's Track" are all awarded at National level. TV series "Waters in Suzhou "and "Jiang Nan" won national award. After Kun Opera, Gu Qin (an ancient Chinese musical instrument) is also listed by UNESCO as Oral and Intangible.

Heritage of Humanity. The first construction phase of China Kun Opera Museum has been completed, and Kunshan City has won a national award "Home to Fold Arts". Changshu city, Taicang city and Jinxi Town of Kunshan City are all named as "home to unique culture". Up to the end of 2003, there are, in the whole municipality, 18 art performing troupes, 107 cultural centers, 11 public libraries, 2 publishing houses, 14 newspapers, 26 magazines, 6 TV stations, 45 cinemas and 19 000 digital TV consumers.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 9

S社会保障 ocial Security

The market-oriented employment mechanism has gradually taken shape and the combination of securities to laid-off and unemployed workers was realized. The whole city provided 370 000 new jobs, of which 158 000 belongs to the urban areas, the unemployment rate of urban area was 3.93%. The number of workers participating in retirement, unemployment, medical, injury and maternity insurance all exceeds 1 million. "Management Method of the Essential Retirement Insurance in Rural Areas" was promulgated. 922 700 farmers joined the retirement insurance, taking up 43.9% of the total labor forces in the rural area. And 391 000 farmers had received basic retirement pension or subsidy. Minimum living guarantee level was raised higher than the last year. The whole city now has nearly 200 senior citizen service centers and provides nearly 10 000 beds. The Rehabilitation Center of Suzhou Welfare Institution and the Center for the Handicapped were established. Suzhou municipality and World Wheelchair Foundation jointly donated nearly 20 000 wheelchairs to the handicapped in the whole city, realizing the goal of one wheelchair for one who need it.

Paragraph 10

E教育 ducation

Educational resources have been further put in order. The structural adjustment of institutions of higher learning, basic education and vocational education witness a major progress. Personal quality education has been promoted in a full scale; basic education's level has been raised up constantly. Senior high school and college and university's enrollment rate reaches 96.3% and 88.3% respectively. Higher education's popularization level has been improved with a gross enrollment rate of 45%. In the year 2006, there are 381 500 pupils, 251 700 junior high school students,

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

115 800 senior high school students and 21 100 vocational school students, 22 100 technician training school students with 3 000 graduates, 63 600 senior vocational school students with 8 600 graduates. 84 000 college and university students with 20 000 graduates. 27 000 adult Open University students with 20 000 graduates. There are 2 universities, 25 primary and middle schools and 5 vocational schools run by non-public organizations, and 3 schools set up by enterprises. Suzhou Compound City of Postgraduate Schools and Suzhou International Education Park speed up its construction, they have already got 300 and 2 000 students study there respectively. 43,800 talented persons with various skills are attracted to work in Suzhou.



苏州的由来

相传商代末年,周君古公亶父有三个儿子:长子泰伯,次子仲雍和幼子季历。季历有子昌,古公亶父认为昌有兴王业的才能,想把君位传给季历再传于昌。泰伯、仲雍了解了这一意图后,为尊重父意,避让君位而逃避到当时被称为荆蛮之地的江南。并入乡随俗,自行"断发文身",表示他们已是荆蛮之人,而不能再回去继位了。他们的这一义行,以及他们带来的周族先进的文化和农业生产技术,受到了当地居民的拥护,在梅里(今无锡县梅村)泰伯被拥立为君长,国号为"勾吴"(勾吴的"勾"是荆蛮语的发声词,无实际意义,勾吴即吴。由于笔误,勾吴也被误写为勾吴)。

从泰伯起十九传至寿梦继位称王(公元前 585 年),吴国始有确切纪年。随着吴国的崛起,梅里的都城已日益不能适应国家发展的需要了,而位于太湖东北岸的苏州,由于自然条件十分优越,交通方便,土地肥沃,物产丰富,人口众多,寿梦二十五年(公元前 561 年),正式将都城迁至苏州。并经过多年的不断经营,具有相当规模。可是由于史籍没有记载,当时城址已无从查考。自此,当时的苏州称为吴国。

公元前 514 年,吴王阖闾下令伍子胥督造水陆双棋盘格局的城池,自此,苏州的地理位置沿革至今。公元前 522 年,秦始皇在吴都城设会稽郡、吴县,自此,当时的苏州称为吴县,或有时称为吴州。公元 589 年,隋改吴州

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

为苏州(以苏州城西姑苏山得名,苏州的名称始此。另姑苏山由吴王阖闾建姑苏台得名,现山上仍有遗迹)。

公元778年,唐朝设苏州为江南唯一的"雄州"(唐制州分七等,"雄州"为二等),从此,苏州名称被固定作为通称。公元1113年,宋改苏州为平江府。

综合历史变革,苏州有很多的别称:姑苏、吴、吴县、东吴、平江、吴中等等。又由于苏州城内河道纵横,又称为水都、水城、水乡,十三世纪的《马可波罗游记》将苏州赞誉为东方威尼斯。

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

The Humble Administrator's Garden 拙政园
Pavilion of the Surging Waves 沧浪亭
Lingering Garden or Garden to Linger In 留园
Lion Grove 狮子林
Garden of Master-of-the-Net 网师园
Tight Hill 虎丘
Panmen Gate 盘门
Tuisiyuan (Retreat and Meditation Garden) 退思园
Zhouzhuang—Oriental Venice 周庄——东方威尼斯
Guanqian Street 观前街
Suzhou Theatrical Museum 苏州戏剧博物馆
Suzhou Folk Customs Museum 苏州民俗博物馆
Suzhou Museum 苏州博物馆
Suzhou Silk Museum 苏州丝绸博物馆
Sheraton Suzhou Hotel & Tower 吴宫喜来登大酒店
Suzhou Hotel 苏州酒店
Youngor Central Hotel 雅戈尔富宫大酒店
Gloria Plaza Hotel Suzhou 凯莱大酒店
Sicily Pub & Restaurant 西西里西餐厅
Deyuelou Restaurant 得月楼
Chuanjia Restaurant 川家大酒店
Lao Dongwu Restaurant 老东吴食府
Nankai Restaurant 南开大酒店
Suzhou High-Tech Industrial Development Zone 苏州高新技术产业开发区

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

Suzhou Industrial Park 苏州工业区	Third People's Hospital of Suzhou 苏州第三人民医院
Second People's Hospital of Suzhou 苏州第二人民医院	

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 4 上海 Shanghai

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. The word "Shanghai" in Chinese means literally "a port on the sea".
   "上海"这个词在汉语里的字面意思是"海上之埠"。
2. From Nanjing Road to Oriental Pearl TV Tower will take five minutes.
   从南京路到东方明珠电视塔要 5 分钟的路程。
3. It is experiencing double-digit economic growth and its average per capita income is one of China's highest.
   上海经济正以两位数的增长速度发展,人均收入居中国之最。
4. Shanghai is called the dragon's head of the burgeoning Yangtze River basin.
   上海如今是蓬勃发展的长江流域的龙头。
5. Shanghai urban population is approximately 13 million plus four million "Floaters".
   上海市区人口约 1 300 万,另外还有 400 万"流动大军"。
6. The greater Shanghai area has at least 13.4 million people.
   上海市区至少有 1 340 万人。
7. In Shanghai, the hottest temperature is 35℃ in July and August, and the coldest is—3℃ in January and February.
   上海天气最热是在七八月间,气温最高可达摄氏 35 度。最冷则在一二月间,气温降至摄氏零下 3 度。
8. Generally, Shanghai natives speak Shanghai dialect.
   上海人一般讲上海方言。
9. It is also linked by air with more than 70 other cities including Los Angeles, New York, Osaka, Paris, Seattle, Seoul, Tokyo, and Vancouver.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

上海可以直飞世界70多个城市，包括洛杉矶、纽约、大阪、巴黎、西雅图、汉城、东京及温哥华。

10. After the opening of the Pudong International airport, international Flights will gradually shift to the new airport, and only domestic flights will go from Hongqiao Airport.
浦东国际机场启用后，国际航班将陆续移向新机场，而虹桥机场只起落国内航班。

11. Shanghai is the most liveable city now for foreigners in China.
对外国人来说，上海是目前中国最有吸引力的城市。

12. In Shanghai, the best location for visitors is near and along the Bund.
在上海，游客的最佳选择是沿外滩就近入住。

13. Nangjing Road is visited by at least 200 000 people daily.
南京路每天人流量至少有20万。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

B 简介 Brief Introduction

Shanghai, a municipality directly under the Central Government, is one of the largest commercial cities and economic centres of China. It's a coastal opening city as well as a famous historic and cultural one. Situated 31.4 degrees north latitude and 121.29 degrees east longitude, Shanghai lies in the middle of China's mainland coastline, and Yangtze River's entrance to the sea. Covering an area of 6 341 square km and with a population of more than 13.5 million, it is the largest city in China and one of the five super cities of the world. Shanghai is also one of ten world's largest seaports.

It has an oceanic and monsoon climate in the subtropical zone. With an annual average temperature of 15.5 degrees Centigrade, and rainfall of 1 120 millimetres. Shanghai is neither cold in winter, nor very hot in summer. Its

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

land is fertile and crisscross with rivers and ports. The coastal area abounds in resources of fish and salt.

Shanghai is endowed with favourable geographical and natural conditions, and a long history of development. It has a well-developed commodity economy and comparatively high scientific and technological level. As the biggest industrial centre in China, Shanghai ranks first in the value of its industrial production, as compared with other Chinese cities. Its main industry includes metallurgy, chemicals, petroleum, machinery, automobiles, electronics, shipbuilding, light industry, textiles, electrical appliances, and other industries, which hold an important position in China. Shanghai is the chief producer of industrial goods, and a major export base in China as well.

The Pudong Development Area in Shanghai is an important special economic zone in China. The level of the new area's industry, commerce, finance, trade, post and telecommunications stands at the forefront in China. More than 130 buildings there are higher than a hundred metres.

As the most prosperous business center in China, Shanghai leads all the others in both social commodity's total volume of retail sales and export value. In recent years, it has made rapid progress in finance and banking service, and stands only next to Beijing, as one of the main financial centres in China.

Shanghai is an important hub of communications. It has an easy access to the outside world by all means of transport: ocean, offshore and inland water shipping, high way and railroad transport, air flights etc. As the biggest seaport in China, the port of Shanghai has trade links with ports of over 100 countries and regions.

Efforts are being made to develop Shanghai into a modern international economic, financial and trade centre.

Paragraph 2

上海购物指南
Guide to Shopping in Shanghai

Rising and thriving on the basis of commerce, Shanghai has long been

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

a very famous shopping city in China. Crowded with department stores, shopping malls, age-old stores, specialized shops, super-markets etc.. Vying with one another for excellence in the market performance, Shanghai is able to offer a dazzling and endless array of commodities made either in China or abroad. Complete collections of famous brands, and rich assortments of specialties and quality goods. Thanks to the highly developed commodity economy and Shanghainese particular attention to life tastes and material benefits, it has become a showcase for fashions and products of both domestic and international famous brands. And becomes a place of concentration of competitively priced quality goods for customers to compare and choose from.

Since the beginning of the Nineties, as most flourishing commercial centers in China, the famous streets like Nanjing Road, Huaihai Road, Sichuan North Road, Yuyuan Shopping City, Xujiahui etc. have undergone large scale renovation or reconstruction.

Shopping Centers

Nanjing Road (Huangpu & Jingan district)

Known as "China's No. 1 Business Street", with over 100 old name specialized shops, and Shanghai No. 1 Department Store located here, selling general merchandise.

Huaihai Road (Luwan & Xuhui district)

Selling mainly high and medium class goods, many specialized shops and boutiques for famous brands, popular for garments and footwears in particular.

Sichuan North Road (Hongkou district)

Selling large assortment of daily necessities, mainly made in China, price range fit for wage earners with strong sense of good value for money.

Yuyuan Commercial City (Nanshi district)

Known as "Kingdom of Shanghai Arts & Crafts and small Articles", selling articles ranging from antiques, jadeware, gold & silver ware, jewelry, to bottle caps, silk threads etc.

Xujiahui (Xuhui district)

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Selling products of all price levels, shops, restaurants, amusement parks, offices and apartments under one roof.

Zhangyang Road (Pudong New district)

Located in the New Century Tower, "First Shanghai Yaohan" is the largest department store in Asia. Another major department store, "New Shanghai" occupies floor space twice as big as the total floor space of all shops on Nanjing Road.

Nightless City (Zhabei district)

Selling tourist souvenirs, arts &crafts, native produce, daily necessities, coins, stamps, discs etc. A combination of shopping and tours with business, known as "The Pearl at Shanghai Land Entrance Gate".

Paragraph 3

交通与交流
Transportation and Communication

There is a counter with English-speaking staff that can direct you to one of several public buses the city offers. There you will find information on each bus route. The most popular line is the number two line, which stops at Jingan Temple in the Nanjing Xi Lu central business district. The number one line will take you to Hongqiao Airport if you need to catch a domestic flight. The airport's public buses are clean and inexpensive (RMB 18 for the number two line), but if you are willing to pay a premium for peace and personal space you may be better off with a taxi.

Shanghai has the world's first commercial-use magnetically levitating train. It is accessible from the second floor of Pudong airport. The train reaches top speeds of more than 400 km/hour before dropping its passengers off at Longyang Lu subway station in Pudong, which, to be precise, is in the middle of nowhere. From there you will have to take either a cab or the number two subway line into the city. It is hoped that someday the maglev train will be extended so that it goes somewhere useful. Tickets are RMB 40 with a plane ticket and RMB 50 without.

Taxis are the most expensive option from Pudong to downtown Shang-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

hai. DO NOT catch a ride with a taxi driver that approaches you inside the airport terminal or pay any attention to touts. Line up at the standard taxi queue and you are unlikely to be scammed. Just in case, make sure your driver uses the meter.

Paragraph 4

上海的竞争力
Shanghai's Competitiveness

Shanghai has the second-strongest competitiveness in talent among all the cities in China, with a big demand for human resources. The high educational attainment of the residents makes the city very competitive in terms of skill quality, quantity and deployment.

The capital competitiveness of this coastal metropolis occupies first place in China, as the city boasts abundant capital from diverse sources, high capital quality, strong financial control capacity and easy capital accessibility.

The city's competitiveness in science and technology ranks second nationwide, with great strength in scientific research, strong innovation capacity and prompt commercialization of research findings.

Shanghai's structural competitiveness ranks 13th in the country. Its economic system is fairly complete, despite inadequate flexibility. The improvement of the industrial structure is progressing rapidly, gaining for the city certain aggregation advantages.

Shanghai leads the country in the competitiveness of its infrastructure facilities. The scale and growth of internal and external infrastructure facilities and IT infrastructure facilities are both very satisfactory, but the cost is high.

Shanghai's comprehensive location-based competitiveness is the best in China, as it has an advantageous geographical location and a distinct economic position. It is next only to Beijing in political and cultural aspects, but its resources in this respect are inadequate.

The city's environmental competitiveness is quite good. With an effective combination of artificial and natural landscapes, the urban environment is fairly comfortable. However, further efforts are needed to tackle the prob-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

lems of serious pollution and poor urban environmental quality.

Shanghai's long history of commerce has imbued the local people with a strong awareness of commerce and a keen sense of competition. They also have an open and free climate for innovation and development, and a cultural competitiveness that is second to none in China.

The institutional competitiveness of this oriental economic showcase is the third-highest in China. Shanghai has put in place a complete legal system, with close integration of government examination, approval and regulation, and a market economy. The city is also doing a good job of protecting intellectual property rights.

Paragraph 5

上海：稳步发展中……
Shanghai: Heading Steadily...

A recent Financial Times survey indicated that if there were to be a third world financial center, it would be Shanghai. China's dynamic economic powerhouse and megalopolis of 10 million people is consciously aiming for this goal.

There are currently financial institutions from 27 countries in Shanghai. Total assets from available foreign banking services in the metropolis amount to US $20 billion—half of that in all of China. Shanghai has more foreign financial institutions than any of its counterparts in China, and 256 of the world's top 500 enterprises have branches in the city.

It was in the early 21th century that Shanghai became the largest and most important financial center in East Asia, superior to Tokyo, Hong Kong and Singapore. The Shanghai Stock Exchange was formerly Asia's largest, most active and internationalized stock market. The city has also been site of establishment of world top-notch financial institutions, such as AIG and HSBC. Having historically been the most open-minded and Westernized commercial center, the market economy concept is one ingrained in the Shanghai citizenry's collective conscious.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 6

Culture 文化

Shanghai culture has a palpably international flavor. Western-style restaurants and coffee bars have been common here since the 19th century, and the Bund is the most famous feature of the municipality's cache of early 20th century Western architecture. In recent years, the municipal government has hosted a number of international events, including the Shanghai International Art Festival, the Shanghai International Film Festival, the Shanghai TV Festival, and the Shanghai Tourism Festival, as well as hundreds of international expos, the Tennis Masters Cup and F1 races.

Shanghai residents spend more on cultural activities than those of any other city. A recent survey indicates that the cultural expenditure of Shanghai citizens has steadily increased, particularly among young people. F1 rallies and the NBA league are everyday aspects of the lives of Shanghai consumers, and the Shanghai Museum is the world's fourth largest, after London's British Museum, New York's Metropolitan Museum and Paris' Palais du Louvre.

It is also a city of theater, concert and cinema goers. The Shanghai Grand Theater is now an established venue for world top performance artists. Theatergoers from Japan, the ROK and HongKong frequently fly in to see a particularly fine concert or play being performed there. International companies with branches in Shanghai often choose it as site of their AGMs with the performance season in mind.

Paragraph 7

Shanghai's Industrial Blueprint 上海的工业前景

The Shanghai industrial authority has established a five-year development blueprint to turn Shanghai into one of China's six largest industrial bases. The city will develop information technology, finance, commerce and

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

trade, automobiles, manufacturing and real estate into its six new pillar industries; They will become a major part of the city's growing economy. Four growing industries including biomedicines, new materials, environmental protection and transport will be encouraged to develop. Priority will also be given to developing the petrochemical and iron and steel industries. As China's economic centre, Shanghai will pay particular attention to developing its banking industry focusing on the stock market, foreign currency exchange and insurance. When these key projects are completed, the local industries will be able to challenge the world's best when China's entrance of the World Trade Organization (WTO) in 2001. Under the blueprint, the city's industries will account for one-tenth of the nation's total industrial output value by 2005.

Shanghai's per capital GDP exceeded US $ 5 600 in 2003, and is expected to reach US $ 10 000 by 2010.

Paragraph 8

上海成功申办2010年世博会
Shanghai's Success in the 2010 World Expo Bidding

On December 3, 2002 China's dreams for the 2010 World Exposition came true as Shanghai won the bid in the fourth round of voting at the Bureau of International Exhibition's (BIE) 132nd General Assembly in Monte Carlo, Monaco. Shanghai beat four other cities and won 54 votes out 88 member countries in the final round. The other four competing countries lost out in the order of Poland, Mexico, Russia and finally the Republic of Korea—which lost by 20 votes to China. It was the result of three years of strenuous effort that started at the end of 1999 when China, as the first country, presented its oral application to the Bureau. Its formal application was presented on May 2, 2001. In the fourth round of voting at the Bureau's 132nd General Assembly, 89 BIE members granted 54 votes to Shanghai for the 2010 event to top Poland, Mexico, Russia, and the Republic of Korea.

The slogan for the event is "Better city, better life." The triumph marked the extension of the global event to a developing country for the first time

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

since its debut in 1851 and Shanghai is ready to add a unique touch to the grand occasion. Though all with distinguished characteristics, Shanghai stood out among the five candidate cities with convincing advantages. Bent on becoming an international economic, finance, trade and shipping centre, 700-year-old Shanghai has amazed the world with breath-taking changes in its landscape, as well as economic might in recent years. Nonetheless, the country's sustained rapid economic growth may be the most persuading reason behind the choice. By translating into more opportunities for people in the region and beyond, a thriving Shanghai fits well the aim of the World Exposition to promote the exchange of ideas and development worldwide. The exposition is widely regarded as the economic, science and technology Olympics. In the wake of Beijing's successful bid to stage the 2008 Olympics, Shanghai's victory will further cement the country's modernization surge.

Paragraph 9

百万富豪展
Millionaire Fair Held in Shanghai

The 2006 Millionaire Fair recently held in Shanghai was a lavish event featuring incredibly expensive commodities, including jewelry worth RMB 200 million and a RMB 500 000 dog collar. The three-day exhibition attracted throngs of Chinese browsers and its ticket sales amounted to RMB 7 million. Dutch jewelry company Gassan exhibited a rare 121-faceted diamond. A 3.5-carat diamond valued at RMB 1.5 million was sold minutes after the fair was opened, and Benno Lesser, chairman of Board of Directors of Gassan, revealed that more than 100 customers ordered diamonds at the event. Ernst and Young, one of the world's leading professional financial service organizations, estimates that 175 million Chinese consumers can afford famous brands, and that of these 10 to 30 million are frequent purchasers of luxury goods.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Cultural Links
文化链接

上海名称的由来

上海之称始于宋代，当时上海已成为我国的一个新兴贸易港口，那时的上海地区有十八大浦，其中一条叫上海浦，它的西岸设有上海镇。这是上海这一名称的由来。1949 年，上海设为直辖市。

古时，上海地区的渔民发明了一种竹编的捕鱼工具“扈”，当时还没有上海这一地名，因此，这一带被称为“沪渎”，故上海简称“沪”。春秋战国时上海是楚春申君黄歇封邑的一部分，故上海别称“申”。

上海是我国最大的工商业城市。从古至今，上海的发展与贸易有着密切的联系。大约从宋代开始，随着商贸的日益兴盛，上海一跃成为“东南名城”，尤其在清道光年间更是“商贾云集”、“城内外无隙地”。

不过，上海名称的出现和上海作为一个独立的行政区并不是很久以前，在唐代它仅仅是华亭县的一部分。关于上海名称的由来目前有两种说法：一种说法是取自《弘治上海志》中“其地居海上之洋”这句话；另一种说法认为由于当时有上海浦和下海浦等水道而得此名。但是无论哪一种说法，有一点可以肯定的是，宋代开始设置上海镇，而且上海之名也最早出现在北宋郏亶之的《水利书》中。至元代改称上海县，1928 年设置上海特别市，两年后改称上海市，一直到现在。

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

Nanjing Road 南京路	Shanghai Wild Life Park 上海野生动物园
Yu Garden 豫园	Oriental Pearl TV Tower 东方明珠广播电视塔
Jade Buddha Temple 玉佛寺	Shanghai Grand Theatre 上海大剧院
The Bund 外滩	Shanghai Ocean Aquarium 上海海洋馆
Shanghai Concert Hall 上海音乐厅	
Shanghai Museum 上海博物馆	
Longhua Temple 龙华寺	

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Shanghai Port 吴淞口
Zhujiajiao—a canal Town
朱家角——运河边小镇
Disney-Like Theme Park
迪斯尼式公园
The Nanpu and Yangpu Bridges
南浦和杨浦大桥
Pudong 浦东
Chongfu Taoist Temple 崇福道院
Lu Xun Memorial Hall 鲁迅纪念馆
Huangpu River Cruise 黄浦江游览
Song Qingling Mausoleum
宋庆龄陵墓
Lu Xun Former REsidence 鲁迅故居
Zhou Enlai Former Residence
周恩来故居
Dianshan Lake Scenic Site
淀山湖风景游览区
Grand View Garden, Old water Town
大观园水乡古镇
Visit to Suburban Village Homes
郊区新村家访
Songjiang Square Pagoda Park
松江方塔公园
Sightseeing & Shopping, Nanjing Road 南京路观光购物区
Dr. Sun Yat-sen Former REsidence
孙中山故居
Westin Shanghai 上海威斯汀酒店
Howard Johnson Plaza Hotel
古象大酒店
JW Marriott Hotel Shanghai
明天广场金威万豪酒店
Holiday Inn Downtown Shanghai
上海广场假日酒店
Portman Ritz-Cariton Hotel
波特曼丽晶酒店
Shanghai JC Mandarin
上海锦沧文化大酒店

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 5 南昌 Nanchang

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. On August 1st, 1927, Nanchang Uprising broke out in Nanchang.
   1927 年 8 月 1 日,南昌起义在南昌爆发。
2. Prince Teng's Pavilion was first built in Tang Dynasty.
   滕王阁最初建于唐代。
3. Being over 2 200 years old, Nanchang is a city with significant historical.
   南昌是历史名城,已建城 2 200 多年。
4. As the capital city, Nanchang is undoubtedly the political, economic and cultural center of Jiangxi Province.
   作为江西省会,南昌无疑是政治、经济、文化中心。
5. Nanchang belongs to the sub-tropical monsoon climate; therefore it will bring you mild and pleasant weather for almost all the year round.
   南昌属亚热带季风气候,因此气候长年温和宜人。
6. Nanchang is a beautiful city with the Gan River, the mother river of local people, traversing through the whole city.
   南昌是一个美丽的城市,当地人的母亲河赣江流经整个城市。
7. Water is her soul or in other words water carries all her beauty.
   水是她的灵魂,或者换句话说她所有的美丽来源于水。
8. Lakes and rivers in or around Nanchang bring a special kind of charm to the city.
   四周的河流或湖泊使南昌成为一座具有特殊魅力的城市。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

9. Nanchang is honored as a green pearl in the southern part of China, thanks to its clear water, fresh air and great inner city virescence.
南昌被誉为中国南部的绿色明珠是因为这座城市的青山绿水及绿化工程。
10. Long and splendid history endows Nanchang with many cultural relics, among which the Pince Teng's Pavilion is the most famous.
悠久灿烂的历史赋予南昌许多名胜,其中最有名的是滕王阁。
11. It is no exaggeration to say that Pince Teng's Pavilion is the pride of all the locals in Nanchang.
可以毫不夸张地说,滕王阁是所有南昌人的骄傲。
12. Many men of letters left their handwritings here which tremendously enhance its classical charm.
许多文人在这里留下的笔迹为南昌增添古典气息。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

南昌简介
n Brief

Like much of Jiangxi, Nanchang is full of significant moments in China's Communist history. The Nanchang Uprising, which took place on August 1, 1927 was one of the first major clashes between Communist forces and Chiang Kai-shek's Nationalist troops. August 1 is celebrated today as the anniversary of the founding of the People's Liberation Army (PLA).

Nanchang has three investment zones, but its inland location and the fact that it is surrounded by more appealing investment destinations and regional markets has relegated the city to investment hinterland status.

The city suffers from scorching summers and freezing winters made even less pleasant by the area's high humidity.

The mountain resort of Lushan in northen Jiangxi makes for an interest-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

ing trip both for natural beauty and the colonial architecture left behind by its former Western residents. Longhushan, not far from the Fujian border in the East, is being touted as a new Guilin-style holiday resort.

Paragraph 2

Transportation 交通

By air

Nanchang Changbei International Airport (KHN) was built in 1996. It is located in Lehua Town, about 26 kilometers (about 11 miles) north of the downtown area. Changbei International Airport is the only one in Jiangxi Province which has an international air route. Airplanes here can take you to Beijing, Shanghai, Guangzhou, Shenzhen, Haikou and other major cities in China. The only international air route at this time is to Singapore.

By train

Built in 1996, the Nanchang Railway Station is about three kilometers (about 1.9 miles) from the downtown area. Trains leave here for Beijing, Shanghai, Xi'an, Chongqing, Shenyang and other cities. Take the No. 5, No. 2, or No. 9 public buses to get to the railway station.

By long-distance bus

The road system in Nanchang is fairly good. National roads No. 105 from Beijing to Zhuhai, No. 320 from Shanghai to Kunming, and No. 316 from Fuzhou to Lanzhou intersect here making it very convenient to get in or out of Nanchang City. Major transport companies are the Chang'an Transport Company Limited, the Nanchang Long-distance Bus Station, and the Xufang Bus Station. Buses from the first two stations primarily leave for Nanjing, Shenzhen, Hefei and other cites outside Jiangxi Province; buses from Xufang Bus Station go to cities, towns and counties within Jiangxi Province.

By water

Water routes in Nanchang consist of the Gan River, the Fu River, Elephant Lake, Qingshan Lake, and Aixi Lake. Nanchang Port is the biggest port on the Gan River and also the most important water transportation trans-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

fer point in Nanchang City. From Nanchang Port you can travel by yacht or the Jinggang Shan and Prince Teng's Pavilion passenger ships to visit Poyang Lake, Stone Bell Hill, Poyang Lake Bird Protection Area, Dagu Hill and other attractions.

Paragraph 3

History 历史

In the early Han Dynasty (201 BC), a city called Gàn (贛) was constructed.

In 589 AD (Sui Dynasty), it was renamed Hongzhou (洪州), and eventually Nanchang.

In 653 AD, the Prince Teng's Pavilion was constructed. In 675 AD, Wang Bo (王勃) wrote the classic "Prince Teng's Ge Xu". The building as well as the city became celebrated for Wang's introduction article. The Pavilion has been destroyed and rebuilt several times throughout China's history. In its present form, Prince Teng's Pavilion was reconstructed in the 1980s after being destroyed in 1929 during Chinese civil war.

In 1927, the Nanchang Uprising took place.

In 1939, the Battle of Nanchang took place.

Paragraph 4

Competitiveness of Nanchang 南昌的竞争力

Nanchang's overall rate of competitiveness puts it in middle place in China. Its comprehensive GDP growth is fairly fast, its index of comprehensive environment and resources cost is prominent, its comprehensive employment growth is mediocre, and its comprehensive market occupation and comprehensive income level are both fairly low.

Nanchang's competitiveness in talent is average. The quantity and quality of human resources are not satisfactory, and professionals and skilled workers in particular are in short supply.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Nanchang's capital competitiveness occupies a better place. The quantity of capital and number of financial institutions are small, the financial control capacity is mediocre, but the quality of capital is good, although the accessibility of money should be enhanced.

The city's competitiveness in science and technology puts it in weaker place. Its scientific and technological strength and scientific innovation are of a medium level, and its commercialization of scientific findings needs improvement.

Nanchang's structural competitiveness is in weaker place. Its industrial structure is fairly advanced, the pace of economic structure transfer is moderate, the economic system is fairly complete, with a certain flexibility, but the urban industrial aggregation is very low.

The competitiveness of infrastructure facilities in Nanchang occupies middle place. Its urban and external infrastructure facilities are not yet complete, but its IT infrastructure facilities are advanced. The cost is fairly high.

The governance competitiveness of Nanchang is the eighth strongest, with several indices among the top ten. The government should reinforce the marketing and publicity of its city. But despite poor financial strength, its law enforcement and service provision capacity are prominent.

Nanchang's enterprise management competitiveness is fairly good. Its incentive and restriction performances are excellent, its management expertise and experience are fairly good, and the quality of its products and services is satisfactory. However, efforts are needed to raise the management application and economic benefit levels.

Nanchang's opening-up competitiveness is fairly good. But since the rate of globalization of the economy is low, foreign exchanges and economic cooperation should be enhanced.

Paragraph 5

T 旅游业 ourism

Nanchang in northern Jiangxi Province is the capital of the province and

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

its economic, political, cultural, and communication center. It lies on the south shore of Poyang Lake with the Ganjiang River rolling past its suburbs.

Nanchang achieved economic prosperity during the Sui Dynasty (581-618). In recent times it has one fame for its revolutionary tradition, because it was here that the late Chinese Premier Zhou Enlai and other Chinese leaders in 1927 led the famous "August 1 Uprising," a day that has since been celebrated as the founding day of China's armed forces, the People's Liberation Army.

Qingyunpu

Qingyunpu was the residence of Zhu Da (1626—1705), a noted painter of the Qing Dynasty, when he lived here in seclusion. Hundreds of authentic pieces of his calligraphy and paintings are displayed in the residence, all valuable art treasures.

Hundreds of Flowers Islets (Baihuazhou)

Built in the traditional style of Chinese gardens, Baihuazhou is known for its causeway, bridges, pavilions, artificial hills, and flower nurseries. It is said that in ancient times, the landscapes of this island could rival those of West Lake in Hangzhou.

Other attractions worth a visit are Prince Teng's Tower and Pure Gold Pagoda (Chunjinta).

There are two major streets in Nanchang. One is Ximachi, the downtown area at the crossroads of Zhongshan Road and Shengli Road. The other is Bayi Avenue. This long, and wide street runs through Nanchang, with most of the city's major buildings lining it. Renmin Square (the People's Square) in the middle section of the avenue can accommodate more than a hundred thousand people.



南昌地名的由来

南昌设城始于汉代。西汉高祖五年(前202),大将军灌婴率兵南下,进驻南昌;高祖六年(前201)立豫章郡,领十八县(辖城相当于今江西省境大部),

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

郡的治所设于南昌县中，希望以这一块“南方昌盛”之地为根据地，进而平定南越，以“昌大南疆”。取“南方昌盛”和“昌大南疆”之意，“南昌”之名始此。从此这块“南蛮”之地就有了“豫章”和“南昌”两个名称。据传，灌婴大将军是南昌城的创筑者，故俗称南昌城为“灌婴城”和“灌城”。

自西汉以来，南昌一直是郡、州、道、路、府、县的治所，故人们或以郡名，或以州道名，或以路府名，或以县名，但都是指南昌这块地方。新莽的始建国元年（公元9年），将豫章郡易名为九江郡，南昌县易名宜善，故南昌又有了“宜善”一名。东汉、三国、晋、南北朝，以郡名则为豫章，以郡治所名则为南昌。隋开皇九年（589）罢豫章郡置洪州，治豫章（南昌县改），从此南昌又多了一个“洪州”之名。唐至德元年（756），豫章郡名章郡，“章郡”又成了一个名称。唐宝应元年（762），豫章县改名钟陵县，故南昌又称“钟陵”。南宋、元朝，洪州为隆兴府、隆兴路、龙兴路，治所为南昌、新建，这样一来，“隆兴”、“龙兴”、“新建”的新名称又出现了。明代初年，龙兴路改洪都府，所以南昌又称“洪都”（王勃《滕王阁序》中亦有“洪都新府”之句）。此外，赣江，古亦称章江，所以在古籍中，南昌城又被称为“章江城”、“江城”。因南昌八一起义而被人们称之为“英雄城”、“八一城”。

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

Jiangxi University of Finance and Economics 江西财经大学	Jiangxi Institute of Traditional Chinese Medicine 江西中医学院
Nanchang University 南昌大学	The Former Site of General Headquarters of the August 1 Nanchang Uprising 八一南昌起义总指挥部旧址
Jiangxi Normal University 江西师范大学	The Former Residence of Zhu De 朱德旧居
Jiangxi Agricultural University 江西农业大学	The Former Site of Officers Educational Regiment Established by Zhu De 朱德创办的军官教育团旧址
East China Jiaotong University 华东交通大学	
Nanchang Institute of Aeronautical Technology 南昌航空工业学院	

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

The Memorial Tower to the August 1 Nanchang Uprising
八一南昌起义纪念塔
The Memorial Hall of the Revolutionary Martyrs of Jiangxi Province
江西省革命烈士纪念堂
The Grave of the Revolutionary Martyr Fang Zhimin 方志敏烈士墓
Jiangxi Museum 江西博物馆
The Prince Teng's Pavilion 滕王阁
The Shuiguanyin (Water Avalokitesvara) Pavilion 水观音亭
The Shengjin(Gold Rope) Tower
绳金塔
Qingyun Garden 青云谱
The Xishan (Western Hill) Longevity Palace 西山万寿宫
Meiling Mountain 梅岭
Jiangxi Hotel 江西宾馆
Gloria Plaza Hotel 凯莱大酒店
Jin Mei Yuan 尽美苑
Star Coffee Lounge 星运咖啡廊
Greenery Cafe 绿茵阁西餐厅
Nanchang Ren Jia Hotel 南昌人家
Jiangxi Provincial People's Hospital 江西省人民医院
First Affiliated Hospital of Jiangxi Medical College
江西医学院第一附属医院
Nanchang Economic & Technological Development Zone
南昌经济技术开发区
Nanchang High-Tech Industrial Development Zone
南昌高科技产业开发区
East Lake 东湖
All Flowers Islet 百花洲
West Lake 西湖
South Lake 南湖
Badashanren Academy of Painting & Calligraphy 八大山人书画院
Donglin Temple 东林寺
Dragon Pool at Xiufeng 秀峰龙潭
Fairy Cave 仙人洞
Yellow Dragon Pool 黄龙潭
Dragon Head Cliff 龙首崖
Pavilion Housing Imperial Stele
御碑亭
White Deer Cave 白鹿洞
Wulao Peak 五老峰
Former Headquarters of the Nanchang Uprising 南昌起义总指挥部旧址
Jiangxi Provincial Museum
江西省博物馆

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 6 福州 Fuzhou

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Wuyi is a place for hiking and bamboo rafting down the jade-green Min River.
武夷山是个远足的好去处,可乘竹排在翡翠般的闽江上漂流。
2. Fuzhou is an important coastal city especially for business people and those with relatives in Taiwan.
对商业人士和在台湾有亲友的人来讲,福州是个重要的海滨城市。
3. The Fujian dialect is distinct, neither Cantonese nor Mandarin.
闽南方言独具特色,既不是广东话,也不是普通话。
4. The Fujian dialect is spoken also by the majority on Taiwan.
台湾的大多数人也讲闽南方言。
5. Fuzhou is noted for its hot springs, with over a dozen in Fuzhou itself.
福州以温泉出名,市区就有十多眼温泉。
6. The Buddha-climbed-over-the-wall-noodles with scallops, mushrooms and bamboo shoots is tasteful.
以扇贝、香菇和竹笋为佐料做成的"佛跳墙"很好吃。
7. One is White Pagoda, while the other one is Black Pagoda, very interesting.
一个白塔,一个乌塔,很有意思。
8. If you are interested in seeing temples, the Gold Mountain temple is worth seeing. It is perched on an island west of the city.
要是你对拜佛感兴趣,金山寺也值得一游。金山寺位于城西的一个小岛上。
9. During Tang Dynasty (725 AD), it started to be called Fuzhou.
从唐代(公元725)起,它开始被称为福州。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

10. During the Southern Song Dynasty, Fuzhou became more prosperous; many scholars came here to live and work.
在南宋,福州变得更加繁荣;许多学者来到这里安居乐业。
11. Lin Zexu died on November 22, 1850 at age of 66.
林则徐逝世于1850年11月22日,享年66岁。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

城市简介
In Brief

Fuzhou is an ancient city with a history of more than 2 100 years. It is one of the fourteen open coastal cities in China. Situated by the East Sea and in the lower reaches of the Min River, this area of 12 153 square kilometres is populated with 5.83 million people. The city tree is Banyan. Jasmine flower is known as the symbolic flower of the city.

The city of Fuzhou is alternatively called Three Hills. The Yu, Wu and Screen Hills, all verdant with flourishing trees and grass, form a trangle inside the city. The White and Black Pagodas, elegant and slim as they are, face each other from the Yu and Wu hills. The Min River flows through the city, carrying along with it the reflections of trees and flowers. As it is said, "Three Hills, Two Pagodas and a River" constitute the unique landscape of Fuzhou City. The banyan is the symbolic tree of the city. Since the Song Dynasty (960-1279), this kind of trees have been planted all over the city,and as a local saying goes: "Green shade is the cover of the city, and no other is needed in summer." Ancient banyan trees, shaped like umbrellas and luxuriant with all the youthfulness, offer a comfortable coolness to courtyard. Thus, the city is also called Banyan City. Jasmine flower is known as the symbolic flower of the city. The broad modern avenues and little ancient lanes are permeated with the sweet scent of jasmines, which contend with

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

the Yulan magnolia, banana shrub and orchid, blazing the city with a riot of colour, brimming it with aroma and bringing about the name to the city "Hometown of Flowers and Fruits."

Fuzhou has a honourable title "Civilization by the East Sea." Since the establishment of the city under the reign of Song Dynasty Gaozu over one thousand years ago, the city has even served as the capital either to the king's prefecture or emperor's state or today's province. The rock-face inseription in the Drum Mountain, the Luoxing Tower in Mawei, the Great Iron Buddha in the Kaiyuan Temple and the Jinshan Temple amid the Min River, along with the hundred and more historic sites, have recorded the glory of Fuzhou City. The historical figures such as Lin Zexu, Yan Fu, Sha Zhenbing, Zheng Zhenduo and Gao Shiqi, have always aroused the pride in the hearts of Fuzhou people. The "Treasure Land" Fuzhou has become more and more glamorous today.

Paragraph 2

History 历史

The exact foundation date of this city is not known. When Yue to the north of Fujian was annexed by Chu in 306 BC, a branch of the royal family of the defeated Yue fled Fujian and became the Minyue (闽越) tribe.

The first city wall of Fuzhou was built in 202 BC when Liu Bang, the founding emperor of the Han Dynasty, gave permission to Wuzhu (无诸), the king of Minyue, to set up his capital in Fuzhou. The city was named Ye (冶), meaning "The Beautiful". The name has changed many times, but the city has been continuously occupied since 202 BC and has never suffered major destruction by wars or natural disasters.

The Minyue was annexed by Han in 110 BC and became a part of China, and Fuzhou became Ye County. During the Jin Dynasty, West Lake, East Lake (now silted up) and numerous canals in the city were constructed (282 AD).

When the Jin Dynasty collapsed, the first wave of immigrants of the

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

gentile class arrived in Fujian (308 AD). During Tang Dynasty (725 AD), it started to be called Fuzhou.

More immigrants arrived from the north in 892 AD when the Tang Dynasty collapsed. The Wang family managed to established a kingdom called Min (909—947 AD) with its capital in Fuzhou. Min is still used as another name for the province of Fujian, in names of dialects such as minnan, and the river that runs through Fuzhou is called Min Jiang.

New city walls were built in 282 AD, 901 AD, 905 AD, and 974 AD, so the city had many layers of walls—more than the Chinese capital.

The emperor of the Song Dynasty ordered destruction of all the walls in Fuzhou in 978 AD but new walls were rebuilt later. The latest was built in 1371 AD.

Between 1405 and 1433 AD, the Chinese (Ming) navy fleet, led by Zheng He, sailed from Fuzhou to the Indian Ocean seven times; on three occasions the fleet landed in the East coast of Africa. Before the last sailing, Zheng erected a stele dedicated to Goddess Tian-Fei near the seaport.

In the 19th century, Lin Zexu, a native of Fuzhou, led an unsuccessful attempt to resist the British fleet at Canton Bay, and Lin was exiled to the Russian border. At the end of the First Opium War, Fuzhou became one of the five Chinese treaty ports opened by the Treaty of Nanjing (signed in 1842). Lin Zexu died on November 22, 1850 at age of 66.

On November 8, 1911, revolutionaries staged an uprising in Fuzhou. After an overnight street battle, the Qing (Manchu) army surrendered. On November 22, 1933, the leaders of the 19th army set up a short-lived Republic of China in Fuzhou (compare the name to Chiang's "Republic of China", which literally means "People's State of China"); it collapsed in two months. In 1940, the Japanese army bombed a field outside Fuzhou that started an immense firestorm in the city. A few days later, the Japanese took the city until Japan's surrender in 1945.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 3

Climate 气候

The climate of Fuzhou is comfortable, affording tourists the opportunity to visit the city all the year round, especially between April and November. Fuzhou is a tourist city that boasts both natural and manmade sights. Famous mountains include Mt. Gu, Qi, Shizhu, Baiyan and Xuefeng etc. Famous temples include Yongquan, Xichan, Linyang, Fahai and Yunju etc. Famous tombs like Tomb of Lin Zexu etc. Famous gardens include West Lake etc. Famous towers include the White, Wu and Luoxing etc. and famous bridges including Wanshou and Longjiang etc. and also many former residences of celebrated historical figures. You may find that there are far too many things to see here in one short trip.

Here we have a simple introduction of orientation for guiding tourists' first trip through downtown Fuzhou. In terms of geography, the center of Fuzou City is Wuyi Square and Dongjiekou is the commercial center of downtown Fuzhou. From railway station bus No. 20 will take tourists to Dongjiekou, Bus No. 51 will bring tourists to the crossing of Wusi Lu and Hudong Lu—the financial center of Fuzhou, and bus No. 821 will take tourists to Jinshan, the new expanded city area.

Paragraph 4

Traditional Dishes 传统菜肴

Fo Tiao Qiang (Buddha Jumps over the Wall)

With more than 100 year's history, it is a traditional Min Cuisine recipe. It is said to have been created by the wife of a Fuzhou official, who in 1876 was entertaining an important member of the Fujian Government in his home. His wife, who was an excellent cook placed chicken, duck, pork and seafood together into an empty wine jar to simmer following a recipe which was known at the time as "Full of Blessing and Longevity". When the dish

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

was served, the visitor praised the aroma and the delicious flavor and was so impressed that when he returned home he asked the cook—Zheng Chunfa to learn how the wife of his host had prepared the food. Subsequently, Zheng Chunfa adapted the recipe making it yet more fulsome and on the strength of his creation opened a restaurant named Juchunyuan where he served it to the delight of his customers. One day several talented writers to the restaurant and were served with Zheng Chunfa's special version of "Full of Blessing and Longevity". When he opened the jar in which it had been cooked, the diners were so taken with the gorgeous smell that one of them wrote a poem about it. In it he said that the smell was so wonderful that even a Buddha would stop pattering and jump over the wall to have a taste. Hence the name "Buddha Jumps over the Wall". Simmered in a Shaoxing wine jar using more than twenty ingredients including fish, sea cucumber, chicken, pork and mutton, dried scallop, sea-ear, needle of bamboo shoot and pigeon egg, this traditional dish is widely renowned overseas and is considered the top dish among those of the Min Cuisine.

Ji Tang Dun Hai Bang (Chicken Soup with Sea Clam)

Clams from Changlezhang harbor of Fuzhou are cut into thin pieces and boiled in water to which Shaoxing wine is added partway through the cooking process. The clams are served in a clear chicken soup that is both nutritious and tasty.

Li Zhi Rou (Litchi Pork)

The name of this dish is attributed to the fact that the deep fried pork is cut into small pieces that resemble litchi once cooked. The sauce is made from ketchup, vinegar and white sugar.

Yu Ni (Mashed Taros)

It is a traditional dessert in Min Cuisine. The taros are steamed then mashed with white sugar, eggs and lard. The mixture is steamed for about an hour and served with some oil and a scattering of minced Chinese dates, melon seeds, cherries etc. Mashed taros are popular among Fuzhou people, which is always the last treat in a banquet.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 5

Nightlife 夜生活

As a modern southern city, Fuzhou City is a flourishing entertainment center. All manner of places of entertainment, night clubs and sauna etc. line the busy streets. These places are massed in the area of Jiangjun Temple, Liuyi Lu and Dong Jie Kou. The Hot Springs are a feature of Fuzhou, and are scattered around the Hot Spring Hotel. Air force No. 1 (Address: No. 256, Liuyi Bei Lu) is one of Fuzhou's special recreation places. The recreation programs are elaborately designed each day to cater to your taste—song and dance shows, instrumental performances, fashionable dress shows and honorable guests' performances on Friday and Saturday. Pyramid Music Square, in the parking lot of Fuzhou International Exhibition Center, offers light music, disco and entertainment shows and also they invite stars from different regions to give performances every day. Taoyuan Tea House has a high grade and well served elegant environment. Although there are some wonderful recreational places for tourists to visit in Fuzhou City, the nightlife there is not as glamorous and fascinating as the metropolis of Shanghai and Beijing, etc.

Paragraph 6

Three Treasures of Fuzhou 福州三宝

Lacquer—These products include decorative screens, vases, tea services, smoking sets and stationery etc. Stone Sculptures-Rocks from Mt. Shou are fashioned into seals, vases, stationery, characters, landscapes and flowers etc.

Cork Pictures—Cork is used to make hanging screens, folding screens and decorative articles depicting landscapes, characters, animals and birds.

Ox Horn Comb—Comb carved from horn. Horn combs are made of keratin which is very good for the scalp and which is the same protein that hair

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

is made of. So it elimates static and tearing and natural oils retained in the hair where they should be. Never will 2 combs have the same pattern or coloring. All the colors of ox horn combs are natural.

These crafts are available from the Cultural Relic Head Office (in Cultural Relic Building, Wusi Lu), Industrial Arts Service Office (in Hexi Lu), Fuzhou Oriental Painting and Calligraphy Association (No. 176, Wuyi Bei Lu), Huadu Building, Fuzhou Shopping Center etc. Chatting Jie is another good place for handworks.

Special local products include Olive, Fu (Fuzhou) orange, Furong (lotus) plum and Jasmine tea etc. Tourists can buy these in the big marketplaces.

Paragraph 7

Human Resources 人力资源

Fuzhou has over 100 research institutions, 23 colleges and universities, more than 360 general, vocational, and specialized secondary schools, which in all have a faculty of over 60 thousand professionals. More than 10 thousand college and university graduates are available for the city every year, together with other graduates from polytechnic schools and medium or short term training programs. There are over 20 general, vocational, polytechnic, and international schools in Mawei area. In addition, an abundance of university graduates come to Fuzhou for job opportunities from out of the province.

Cultural Links 文化链接

福州美食-肉燕

相传,早在明朝嘉靖年间,福建浦城县有位告老还乡的御史大人,家居山区,吃多了山珍便觉流于平淡。于是,他家厨师取猪腿的瘦肉,用木棒打成肉泥,掺上适量的番薯粉,擀成纸片般薄,切成三寸见方的小块,包上肉馅,做成

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

扁食，煮熟配汤吃。御史大人吃在嘴里只觉滑嫩清脆，醇香沁人，连呼“大妙”，忙问是什么点心，那厨师因其形如飞燕而信口说“扁肉燕”。后扁肉燕与鸭蛋共煮，因福州话里鸭蛋与“压乱”、“压浪”谐音，寓意“太平”，而又有“太平燕”之说。

“太平燕”是福州的一道著名地方风味小吃，也是福州风俗中的喜庆名菜。福州人逢年过节，婚丧喜庆，亲友聚别，必吃“太平燕”，即取其“太平”、“平安”之吉利，故“无燕不成宴，无燕不成年”。肉燕亦由此成为馈赠佳品，为福州人包括海外乡亲所衷情。

州僻街小巷，听到一串有节奏的“嗒、嗒”之声，循声而去，就可寻及燕皮店。不过，要买正宗上好的燕皮，打制燕皮，猪肉必选后腿的精肉，配以上好的番薯粉，肉粉配比恰到好处；通过精细复杂的工序手工打制而成，薄如白纸，其色似玉，口感软嫩，韧而有劲。

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

Fujian Normal University 福建师范大学
Fuzhou University 福州大学
Fujian Agriculture and Forestry University 福建农林大学
Fujian Medical University 福建医科大学
Fujian College of Traditional Chinese Medicine 福建中医学院
Minjiang University 闽江学院
Fujian University of Technology 福建工程学院
prefecture-level city 地级市
Fuzhou dialect 福州方言
Rongcheng 榕城
Hot Spring Hotel, Fuzhou 温泉大饭店
Lakeside Hotel, Fuzhou 福州西湖大酒店
Ramada Plaza Hotel, Fuzhou 福州华美达广场大饭店
Juchunyuan Restaurant 聚春园大酒店
Fuzhou Delicacy Restaurant 美食园
Fuzhou Antailou Restaurant 安泰楼酒家
Fuzhou Hotel 福州大饭店
Gao Shang Dao Cafe 高尚岛西餐咖啡厅
Greenery Western Restaurant 绿怡西餐厅
Eiffel Cafe 埃菲尔咖啡酒廊

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 7 厦门 Xiamen

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Xiamen is the ancestral home of millions of overseas Chinese.
   厦门是数百万海外华侨的家乡。
2. Xiamen is a port city and an important trading city.
   厦门是个海港城市,也是重要的商贸城市。
3. Zheng Chenggong rid Taiwan of the Dutch in 1662.
   郑成功1662年从荷兰人手中收复台湾。
4. Xiamen is located in the southern part of Fujian Province, between 118°04′ east longitude and 24°26′ north latitude.
   厦门位于福建省南部,东经118°04′,北纬24°26′。
5. Climate Feastures: subtropical monsoon climate.
   气候特点:亚热带季风气候。
6. The average wind power is 3 to 5 level, mainly the northeast wind.
   厦门平均风力为3—5级,主要是东北风。
7. Rainfall: the annual precipitation is 1 100mm; concentrated on May, June and July.
   年降水1 100mm,集中在5、6、7月。

Wonderful Paragraph 精彩片段

Paragraph 1

B 简介 rief Introduction

Xiamen, China's cleanest, most beautiful, seaport city, is located on

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

the southeastern coast of Fujian Province. Xiamen city, as an administrative unit, can be dated back as far as the Song Dynasty. It has always been an important trading port, but since its establishment as one of China's first four Special Economic Zones in 1981, Xiamen has become a "window city" for China's opening to the outside world. It's one of the municipalities approved by the State Council of the People's Republic of China, being specially designated under separate state plan and enjoying provincial level of power in economic management. Today, Xiamen is a rapidly growing city, with a vigorous economy and a fully-modern infrastructure. Over the past 10 years, Xiamen has increasingly focused on the cultivation of international trade, education, and tourism.

Paragraph 2

地理与气候 Geography and Climate

Situated at longitude 118°04'E, latitude 24°26'N, Xiamen consists of Xiamen Island, Gulangyu Islet, and the coastal part of the north bank of inland Jiulongjiang River, covering an area of 1 565 sqkm. Built in 1955, the Gaoji (Gaoqi-Jimei) Causeway has turned Xiamen Island into a peninsula by linking it with the mainland.

Xiamen Municipality consists of six districts and one county. They are Kaiyuan, Siming, Gulangyu, Huli, Jimei, Xinglin Districts and Tong'an County. The population of the city is 1.246 7 million, of which 40% are urban residents.

Xiamen enjoys south subtropical monsoon climate. It is mild in temperature and rich in rainfall. The annual average temperature in Xiamen is 21 degrees C with the absolute highest of 38.4℃ and the lowest of 2℃. The annual rainfall averages at about 1 100 mm, with most of the rainfall concentrated in May, June, and July. The wind forces in Xiamen average at 3 to 5 on Beaufort scale with the northeasterly wind prevailing.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 3

E经济 conomy

Xiamen's economy is growing rapidly, and has become an increasingly popular site for foreign investors. An industrial structure composed of electronics, machinery, textile, foodstuff, chemical, pharmaceuticals and building materials industries has taken shape in the city, and is producing abundant world-advanced and domestic advanced products that are competitively priced and sell well all over the world.

Paragraph 4

T旅游业 ourism

Xiamen was voted China's cleanest city, and has many attractions for the foreign visitor. Xiamen and its surrounding countryside offers spectacular scenery and pleasant tree-lined beaches. Gulangyu, also known as Piano Island, is a popular, peaceful weekend getaway. Xiamen's Botanical Garden is a nature lover's paradise. And the Buddhist Nanputuo Temple, dating back to the Tang Dynasty, is a national treasure.

Paragraph 5

E教育 ducation

Xiamen has a number of excellent Universities and has become a popular place for international students interested in Chinese culture, history and language. Jimei University in Jimei district, supports over thirty scientific and professional organizations and is well known throughout China for its fine architecture and beauty. Xiamen University in Xiamen City is nationally recognized for its high quality and breadth of study. 20.6% of the population in Xiamen are graduates of higher education.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 6

厦门石材展
Xiamen Stone Fair

When the doors to the 6th China Xiamen International Stone Fair (CXISF 2006) opened at the Xiamen International Conference & Exhibition Center, Xiamen, China, almost 17 800 (The figure of the first day) attendees from around the world discovered the fair's brand new look. Celebrating its 6th year as the stone imp & exp premier Asian event, the 2006 edition of Xiamen Stone Fair highlighted the topic "Focusing on Export, Combining International Trade with Domestic Order". Through four days meeting, contact and trade, CXISF 2006 won a significant success.

CXISF 2006 attendees discovered more than 2 200 booths in the 42 000 sq m ground, each showcasing the latest product introductions, innovations, technological advances, design solutions and service. CXISF 2006 welcomed 550 exhibiting manufacturers—from 26 domestic Provinces and 15 oversea countries—with 35% making their CXISF debut and 65% return exhibitors. 85% exhibitors decorated their booths with unique design to spotlight the focus of attendees.

CXISF 2006 experienced substantial increases of attendees across the board from past years: 42 500 manufacturer, quarriers, contractors, architects, designers, builders, distributors, kitchen specialists and retailers from across the country and all over the world attended CXISF 2006—which is a 22% increase in attendance over 2005! Oversea attendees reached 5 500, represented 78 countries, with an increase of 83% over last year. For the first time, attendees from European and North American exceeded who were from Japan and Korea. Attendees from North American boomed in this edition, spotlighted a new concern from the North American Market.

CXISF 2006 not only provided a place made new contacts, built new sales quotas but also a phenomenal occasion for stone professionals to meet face to face, communicate and exchange experience. The overwhelmingly positive response from both exhibitors and attendees proved CXISF 2006 was

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

a triumph for the stone industries. Many exhibitors showed that they were already looking forward to their return next year.

CXISF 2006 also hosted highly successful conference programs—"the Summit Dialogue of Stone Industry 2006", "Conference of Responding to Turkey Antidumping Action on Granite", "CE Marking, basics and practice", "Technical and Practical Overview of Turkish Natural Stone Quarries and Raw Products" and "The Trend of China Kitchen Cabinet Export Forum", offered a variety of options to meet every need. Exhibitors and attendees harvested ideas from these seminars, which they could implement in their business right away.

Paragraph 7

R乡村经济
Rural Economy

In year 2005, the total revenue for agriculture, forest, stock raising and fishery was 3.411 billion Yuan, a 0.5% decrease. It includes: agriculture: 1 292 billion Yuan, a 0.2% increase; Forest: 14 million, a 4.8 increase; Stock raising: 996 million, 9.0% increase; Fishery: 1.108 billion Yuan, a 8.8% decrease. Total yield for grain and bean was 94.4 thousand tons, decreased 20.1%; Vegetable total yield was 614.1 thousand tons, increased 11.4%; Fruit total yield was 36.4 thousand tons, decreased 35.0%; Meat and egg total yield was 85.9 thousand tons, increased 13.8%; Seafood total yield was 167.8 thousand tons, decreased 4.5%. Enlarged rural infrastructure constructure and enhanced living standard of rural areas. Xiamen completed 92 rural compulsory education and public sanitation projects and improve 56 schools; 75% of people in rural area had tap water supply, and 52% had cable TV. Village information service net covered 120 thousand families; Established and perfected animal epidemic disease prevention net in villages, towns, districts and cities; In order to adapt to industrial area, Xiamen implemented new correspond projects; Old village reconstruction and environment renovation developed smoothly. 28.4 thousand extra labors transferred outside. Ensure 15 000 rural families enjoy subsistence allowances. In 2006,

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Per capita net income of rural residents was 6 230 Yuan, increased 10.3% including 2 974 Yuan, average salary income: a 24.% increase. Average consumption expenditure was 4 593 Yuan, increased 11.3% ,it included 1 897 Yuan consumption on food which was 41.3% of the consumption expenditure.

Paragraph 8

National 国内贸易

Total value of social consumption retail sales reached to 2.718 6 billion Yuan, increased by 16% , growth rang was 3.0% higher than last year. Wholesale and retail sales reached 22. 829 billion Yuan, increased by 16.9% , which was 4% of total retail sales; Accomodation and catering retail sales was 3.008 billion Yuan, increased by 12.7% ,which was 11.1% of total retail sales. In 2005, Xiamen Shuyou, Mudan, Lufa ranks Top 100 of Catering Service in China. Tianhong Supermarket was awarded as "Top 10 Supermarkets of Fujian Province". Mudan Hotel at Binbei Road, Jiali Seafood Restaurant were honored as"Top 10 Restaurants of Fujian Province".

Among products of enterprises retail service with limitation, sports, entertainment and casual products reached sales of 128 million Yuan, increased by 81.4%. Retail sales of gold, silver and jewellry, clothes, cosmetics was 241 million Yuan,111 million Yuan and 223 million Yuan respectively,and with an increase of 42.1% 、32.9% &22.5% respectively; Automobile retail sales was 3.715 billion Yuan, increased by 28%. 2 1100 automobiles were sold, 4 819 more than 2004, increased by 29.7% ; Petrol and its products sales was 2.478 billion Yuan, increased by 20.4% ;Retail sales for household electrical products and sound and image products reached to 1 382 billion Yuan, increased by 29.3%. 8 874 pcs of digital camera were sold, increased by 1.98 times; 9 988 music center were sold, increased by 1.77 times; CD/VCD player were sold, increased by 32.9% ; 50 700 household washers were sold, increased by 33.5% ;36 800 microwave ovens were sold, increased by 35.8% ;81 500 color televisions were sold, increasing 25.4% which included

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

5.7% of crystal plasma television.

Paragraph 9

Foreign Trade 对外贸易

Total import and export value of foreign trade was US $ 28.579 billion, a 18.7% increase. It includes US $ 17.268 billion export value which increased by 23.9% and US $ 11,311 billion total import value which increased by 11.5%. Among them, foreign invested import and export value was US $ 18 415 billion, a 19.2% increase, which was 15.6% of total import and export value; Import and export value of private companies was US $ 4.467 billion, a 39.1% increase, which was 15.6% of total import and export value. On export value, machine and electrical products export value was 86 420 billion, a 25.9% increase, which was 50.1% of total export value; High-tech products export value was US $ 3.798 billion, a 17.3% increase which was 22.0% of export total value. Large enterprises export value was US $ 88.711 billion, which was 44.1% of whole sales value, a 18.2% increase. Taiwan Regin is the third largest trade partners of Xiamen. In 2005, Total import and export value of foreign trade with Taiwan was US $ 2.125 billion, increased by 16.2%. This figure includes: 413 million for export value, a 27% increase and US $ 1.712 billion import value, a 13.9% increase.

Total contractual external workforce value was US $ 75 million, decreased 38.5%; Completed turnover was US $ 80 million, increased 6.4%; Workforce outside were 4 137 people, increased by 20.5%; Till the end of 2006, ther were 8 759 people work in other places, increased more 117 than last year.

Paragraph 10

Food 食物

Food in Sichuan, Guangdong, Beijing and Chaozhou flavor is easy to get access in Xiamen. Besides, foreign food such as Korean barbecue, Japanese

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

food, Pizza and Steak is also accessible. Want to try Xiamen food? Xiamen food is dominated by South Fujian cuisine, combined with Taiwan and Chaoshan flavor. The cooking methods include frying, steaming, boiling, salting, and others. The seafood cooking in Xiamen is particularly outstanding with its freshness and slight spice. There are many other local food in Xiamen appealing to tourists.

Famous Xiamen Snack: Nanputuo vegetable dish, meat-rice dumpling, peanut soup, fried noodle tread, fried clam, noodle paste, Xiamen pie, leek pancake. thin cake, sea worm jelly, fried sleeve-fish, braized cabbage, fried liver, etc. Aside from famous old restaurants such as Hao qingxiang, Wu Zaitian and Huang Zehe, visitors are able to taste the local food in most hotels, restaurant and even small food booths. Furthermore, there are many snack centers in Xiamen where one can taste delicious.

Paragraph 11

E 娱乐活动 Entertainment

Nanyin Opera

Nanyin Opera is the traditional opera in South Fujian. Its history can be traced back to Jin and Tang Dynasty. Because of the long history, Nanyin Opera is called "the living full of music"

Gaojia Opera

Gaojia Opera is another form of South Fujian traditional operas and it is most wide spread and popular among South Fujian people.

Gezai Opera

Gezai Opera was born into both Fujian and Taiwan traditions. It wins a large number of fans with its rich rhythms and plays.

Puppet Art

There are two kinds of puppet art in Xiamen: String puppet and palm puppet. In string puppet performance, the operator controls the puppets through pulling the strings; in palm puppet performance, the operator controls the puppets'action by putting his hands into the costumes of those pup-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

pets.

Kong Fu Tea

Kong Fu Tea is made from a special manner which makes it rich in local color.

Xiamen Xiaobailu Folk Dance Troupe

This troupe is the first professional folk dancing group in China and has enjoyed a great reputation both overseas and at home.



厦门博饼文化掌故

博饼,是厦门人几百年来独有的中秋传统活动,是一种独特的月饼文化,也是厦门人对历史文化的一种传承。

在古代,"博"是一种棋戏,后泛指赌博运动。中秋博饼的典故源于清朝初期。那时候,博饼只限于读书人,是为了给自己的秋试博个好彩头。因为这种活动很有趣,而且机会均等,到了清朝中后期就扩展到民间。还有另外一种较为可信的说法:相传,中秋博饼,是郑成功屯兵厦门时为解士兵的中秋相思之情、激励鼓舞士气而发明的。日光岩上士兵博饼的铜塑像即为明证。这种做法一代一代传下来,就成了如今厦门独具特色的民间习俗。当然,沿袭到现在,博饼不再有赌博的意味,而是成为厦门人中秋聚会的保留节目。当骰子在大瓷碗里落下,发出叮叮当当的清脆响声,其乐融融。

博饼内容:在厦门,聪明的商人由此发明了"会饼"。传统的"会饼"由大小不一的月饼汇聚而成,一套共有 63 个,分成状元饼 1 个、对堂饼 2 个、三红饼 4 个、四进(士)饼 8 个、二举(人)饼 16 个和一秀(才)饼 32 个。但随着时代的发展和变化,"会饼"的形式也在发生改变:"会饼"不再是月饼,而由实用物品组合而成,比如沐浴露、洗发水、食品等,只要按照会饼规定的数量组合就可以了。

博饼的工具:会饼一套,骰子一副(6 个),大碗一个(有点深度,而且要瓷碗才好,才能让骰子在碗里跳起来)

博饼的方法:大致是这样的:每个人每次要把 6 个骰子一起投进大碗里,众人依次投骰子,看骰子的点数得饼。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

Gulangyu 鼓浪屿
Southern Putuo Temple 南普陀寺
The Ancient Fort at Huli Hill
胡里山炮台
Wanshi Hill 万石山
Xiamen Powerlong Hotel
厦门宝龙酒店
The Marco Polo, Xiamen
厦门马可波罗东方大酒店
Ambert Court 雅博园
Cafe Maco 马可咖啡厅
Sakura 樱花料理
Shogun 将军日本料理
Venezzia 维尼西亚
Pattaya 芭堤雅泰餐厅
Madame Rouge Western Restaurant
红夫人西餐厅
Portofino Italian Restaurant
波多菲诺意大利餐厅
Singapore Crab Restaurant
新加坡螃蟹馆
Puzhaolou Vgetarian Restaurant
南普陀寺素菜馆
Rooftop Restaurant 观海花园
Shanghai Nights 夜上海
Hollywood Bar 好莱坞酒吧
Xiamen No. 1 Hospital
福建省厦门市第一医院
Xiamen Zhongshan Hospital
厦门市中山医院
Xiamen Export Processing Zone
厦门出口加工区
Xiamen Torch High-Tech Industrial Development Zone
厦门火炬高科技产业开发区
Xiamen Xiangyu Free Trade Zone
厦门象屿保税区

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

3 东北地区
Northeast China

Unit 1 哈尔滨 Harbin

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. An average daytime temperature in January in Harbin is—15℃.
   哈尔滨1月份白天平均气温为零下15摄氏度。
2. Harbin's lowest temperature is—38℃.
   哈尔滨最低的气温可达零下38摄氏度。
3. Harbin's major tourist attraction is Ice Sculpture Festival.
   哈尔滨吸引旅游者的主要景致是冰雕节。
4. The annual Harbin Summer Music Festival is held in July.
   每年一度的哈尔滨夏季音乐节在7月举行。
5. The Sun Island is an ideal place for summer holiday.
   太阳岛是夏日度假的理想去处。
6. Dream World is a great place to swim all year round.
   梦世界是常年可游泳的好地方。
7. Harbin's pine nuts and ginseng is good to have a taste.
   哈尔滨的松果和人参值得一尝。
8. The most exotic dishes in Harbin are moose nose, and hazel grouse.
   哈尔滨最具特色的佳肴属驼鹿鼻和浅色松鸡。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

9. People gather and dance on summer evening in the square in Harbin.
夏日的傍晚,哈尔滨人会聚集在广场上翩翩起舞。
10. There are many Russian churches and synagogues in Harbin.
哈尔滨有许多俄式教堂和犹太教堂。
11. You can see a lot of Russian and Japanese architecture and cobblestone street in Harbin.
在哈尔滨你可看到许多俄式和日式建筑以及鹅卵石街道。
12. The Central Avenue is the main shopping area in Harbin.
中央大街是哈尔滨主要的购物区。
13. The morning markets nearby the Central Avenue are really amazing.
中央大街附近的早市是很吸引人的。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

B 简介 rief Introduction

Often referred to as the "Oriental Moscow" or "Oriental Paris" for its mix of Western and Chinese cultures, Harbin is one of the major cities in Northeast China. Located on the banks of the Songhua River, Harbin is the capital of Heilongjiang Province as well as the biggest city in Northeast China. The city is famous for its moderate weather in summer and its wonderland of ice and snow in winter. Since the founding of the new China, the city has undergone great changes and recorded impressive achievements. Having grown up alongside the far-east railway, built here in 1898, Harbin has become a famous historical city as well as being the cradle of Chinese Jin Dynasty (1115—1234) Culture. In the early 20th century, it became as important international business port and distribution centre for Northeast Asia. En-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

compassing 53 775 square kilometres with a population of 9. 27 million, Harbin is one of the most important industrial cities in China and is the country's largest capital city in terms of area. It is a front-runner industries such as automobile manufacturing, food production, medicine, mechanics and electrical equipment manufacturing. Lying in the hinterland of the Songhua River (1 840 kilometres long), with a drainage area of 545 600 square kilometres) and the Nen River Plains, the city has more than 13. 3 million hectares of arable land and has the largest grain provisions in China. Harbin also has an advanced transportation network including five railways and seven main highways that pass through the city. The city contains buildings in European-styles and attracts tourists every year for its ice and snow, forest, Jin-dynasty attractions and traditional customs. In 1998, the city was honoured as one of the best tourist cities in China. The city boasts 24 higher education institutes and more than 400 research institutes. The city has so far built trade relations with more than 100 countries and cultivated ties with 11 cities in 9 countries.

Paragraph 2

自然资源 Natural Resources

Harbin, with its long history, and the cradle of Jin and Qing Dynasties and the settlement of multi-nationalities. Situated in the belt within 44°04′N to 46°40′N and 120°42′E to 130°10′E, the city is located in the temperate zone with a character of continental climate. The Songhua River, like a shining pearl string, winds through the domain of this distinctive, celebrated city in the northeast China. The well-webbed branches of the river affords a luxuriant vegetation. The black soil here is promisingly fertile and the forest is a symbol of treasury. The Song(Songhua River)Nen(Nen River) Plain well deserves its position as one of the national bases of grains, timber, oil and coal production. Harbin has an area of 53 200 square kilometers. Agriculture is famous for top quality rice, soy bean, and corn. Apart from Korean pine, larch and white birth, more than 40 rare animals like

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Sibera Tiger and bear, and other beasts and birds are in the forest. In the Mountain, there grow some wild economic plants such as ginseng, live in the black edible fungus and mushrooms. There are dozens of mineral deposits such as copper, iron and coal underground.

Paragraph 3

N民族和人口
ationalities and Population

Harbin has a population of 9.4623 million people, 3.2986 million of whom are urban residents. The thriving civilization has been the fruits of common efforts made by the people of more than 40 ethnic groups, including the Han, the Korean, the Manchurian, the Hui, the Tibetan, the Ewen, the Oroken, the Miao, the Zhuang, the Daur, The Xibe, the Hezhe, the Russian, the Tujia, and the Uygur.

Paragraph 4

A区域划分
dministrative Division

Harbin has 7 districts and 12 counties (cities). Urban districts include DaoLi district, DaoWai district, NanGang district, XiangFang district, DongLi district, TaiPing district, PingFang district. The counties (cities) include Wuchang city, Shuangcheng city, Acheng city, Shangzhi city, Bayan county, Hulan county, Bin county, Yilan county, Yanshou county, Mulan county, Tonghe county, and Fangzheng county.

Paragraph 5

T旅游业
ourism

Harbin is a city with particular scenes. With comfortable climate in summer, it is a famous summer resort. Rich and colorful winter activities turn cold and bleak winter into an advantage, as is her graceful summer. Harbin people change ice and snow into miraculous effects: cold to happy,

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

winter to grand festival. Harbin Ice and Snow Festival, beginning in 1985, has been successfully held for 13 times. Now, it has become a traditional grand festival with trade, science and technology, tourism, culture, and sports as a whole. Harbin Ice Lantern Gala Party, the key program of Ice and Snow Festival, has been held for 23 times. Ice sculpture and snow carving competition are the expressions of ice and snow art essences. Ice and snow tour in Harbin is also splendid. It is listed as one of 35 national best scenic spots in China by the national government. Yuquan Hunting resort is currently the largest closed hunting resort in China. Yabuli Skiing Ground is just two-hour drive away, where tourists can get much pleasure from skiing, In 1997 China Tour Year, Harbin brought out more than 10 tour items with particular style such as ice and snow tour, hunting tour, summer tour, and so on. The beautiful Sun Island is confirmed " The Bordary Scenic Spot " by National Tour Bureau, and ice and snow scenic tour as "Special Line Tour". Harbin keeps a long-term contact with more than 60 tour agencies from over 20 countries and regions. Around Harbin, Zalong Red-crowned Crane Nature Protection Zone, Jingpo Lake Scene, and the like are attracting many more tourists both at home and abroad for their unique charming. In 2006 Harbin had 82 travel agencies,33 foreign-related travel hotels, 20 travel shopping centers, 74 travel companies supplied buses, boats and taxis, more than 60 natural landscapes, more than 20 artificial landscapes, forming a good service system for touring and entertaining.

Paragraph 6

A 建筑 Architecture

Harbin's architecture has its unique characteristics among Chinese large cities. There are buildings not only of various European styles, but also of traditional Chinese style. In recent years, the emergence of some buildings with modern features reinforces this integrating character. Walking along Central Avenue, you will find, on both sides of this street with a nearly-one-hundred year history, Gothic, Baroque, Byzantine, Eclecticism,

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

New Art Movement and Post-Realist building, reminding you of its eventful and colorful history. If you ride a car into the urban district of Harbin, those traditional Chinese buildings with carved beams and painted rafters, red walls and green glazed tiles will continuously catch and carry your attention. If you take a bird view down at the city of Harbin, the high-rise huge architectural complex just below. Every residential community has its own style, the Sunlight Hall of Hongbo Square is glimmering, Songhua River is just as a floating colorful ribbon. The architectural complex of Harbin look like condensed music notes, revealing the romance of European Middle Ages. Elegance of traditional Chinese art, and enthusiasm of the modern life.

Paragraph 7

哈尔滨冰雪经济
Harbin's thawing Economy

Little Pairs of the East Russian playground, the city that investment forgot, that cold place with the ice lantern, such are some of the popular characterizations of Harbin, capital of Heilongjiang province in China's cold and northeast.

As with most generalizations, these perceptions do have some foundation in reality: Harbin does have some cobblestone streets which evoke a sense of Pads, there is a sprinkling of dangerous-looking Russians, and winter temperatures do fall to minus 40 Celsius. But large areas of the city are also in the early stages of an urban renewal, and paralleling that is the rise, or revival, of Harbin's middle class.

Today's positive momentum is a ray of hope for Harbin, or "Ice City", which has a troubled past. The nadir of the city's recent history was occupation by Japan in the first half of the 20th century and the atrocities committed by its top secret germ warfare Unit 731.

After the opening up of China in 1979, this city in China's "rust belt" began to lag behind the eastern provinces south of the Yellow River- creating a gap that is still quite evident today.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

With the end of the Cold War, Soviet border concerns eliminated and Russia's messy transition from a centrally planned economy to whatever it is now, Harbin was perfectly placed to benefit.

A retired trader residing in Harbin agrees. "1992 was the turning point," she said. "The Chinese government opened the border with Russia and until about 1995 there was a lot of money to be made."

Harbin-based traders made frequent trips to the southern cities of Guangzhou, Wenzhou and Shanghai to buy luxury goods out of the back door of factories. They then took the goods back up to Heilongjiang to trade for steel, copper, furs and even Russian dogs which were a status symbol for a few years.

"Buying dogs was great" recalled another former cross-border trader. "We used to buy pedigree Russian dogs for RMB 500 across the border and then sell them for between RMB 3 000 and 10 000 in China. The trick was to give the dogs some alcohol before you crossed the border to knock them out."

Harbin still has numerous problems, most notably bankrupt SOEs. With most of its local firms still in the early stages of trimming the fat, Harbin will have a hard time turning things around—a local official estimated that around 60% of Harbin's SOEs are facing the bleak choices of either merging, changing industry or closing. This translates into rising unemployment and poverty.



哈尔滨市

哈尔滨市位于黑龙江省南部、松花江畔。别称冰城。黑龙江省省会，是全省政治、经济、文化、交通中心。市区人口 299 万，现辖阿城、尚志、双城、五常四市和呼兰、依兰、方正、宾县、巴、木兰、通河、延寿八县。

哈尔滨是我国历史文化名城之一，早在公元 11 世纪，满族的祖先就在此建立了"阿勒锦"村，元代转音为"哈尔滨"。1945 年设市。1946 年 4 月 28 日解放。是我国重要的机电工业城市，亚麻纺织、甜菜制糖、造纸、榨油

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

等工业全国闻名。

哈尔滨市是一座美丽的城市，建筑风格独特享誉国内外，被誉为“东方巴黎”、“东方莫斯科”。从1961年开始，每年夏季举行“哈尔滨之夏”音乐会。每年年初举办的“冰雪节”活动享誉国内外。观光景点有太阳岛、极乐寺、圣索菲亚教堂、东正教堂等。

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

Sculpture Festival 冰雕节	Jewish Museum of History and Culture in Harbin 哈尔滨犹太历史文化博物馆
Harbin Summer Music Festival 哈尔滨夏季音乐节	Laodu Yichu Dumpling Restaurant 老都一处饺子馆
The Sun Island 太阳岛	Liyuan Shaokao 利园烧烤
Dream World 梦世界	Portman Bar 波特曼西餐厅
pine nut 松果	Dongfang Jiaozi Wang 东方饺子王
ginseng 人参	Hiarbin Medical College First Affiliated Hospital 哈尔滨医科大学第一附属医院
Russian Church 俄式教堂	Harbin Economic and Technology Development Zone 哈尔滨经济技术开发区
synagogue 犹太教教会，犹太教堂	
cobble-stone 鹅卵石	
Central Avenue 中央大街	
Yabuil Windmill Mountain Resort and Ski in Winter 亚布里风车避暑山庄和冬季滑雪场	

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 2 长春 Changchun

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Changchun is noted mostly as an industrial city.
   长春是个著名的工业城市。
2. There are about 150 frost-free days in Changchun every year.
   长春每年大约有 150 天无霜期。
3. Changchun is noted a city of forests.
   长春素有“森林之城”的美称。
4. Changchun is also famous for a city of everlasting spring beyond the Great Wall.
   长春还有“塞外春城”的美誉。
5. On summer evenings you can find dancers in costumes on cultural Square.
   夏日傍晚你会看到许多人身穿民族服装在文化广场翩翩起舞。
6. The Songhua River runs through the Changchun city.
   松花江流经长春市。
7. The Former Palances of the Last Emperor was located after the Japanese surrender.
   末代皇帝以前的宫殿在日本投降后被劫掠一空。
8. Its area is 18 881 square kilometers with a population of 7.4 million.
   长春面积 18 881 平方公里，人口 740 万。
9. Sika deer is famous here, while the output of pilose antler takes the lead in the whole country.
   这里是著名的梅花鹿产地，而鹿茸产量居全国首位。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

10. Changchun city is the important rail hub in the middle part of northeast China.
长春市是东北地区中部重要的铁路枢纽。
11. In mineral resources, there are coal, petroleum, limestone, zeolite, sodium base grease clay and marble etc.
在矿产资源方面,长春有煤炭,石油、石灰石、沸石、黏土、大理石等。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

General Situation 概况

Situated in Jilin province, Changchun city is the provincial capital and important machine building base of China. Its area is 18 881 square kilometers with a population of 7.4 million.

Changchun city is located at the middle part of Songliao plain. It belongs to semi-moist monsoon climate with an annual temperature of 4.8℃, annual average precipitation of 611 mm and frost free period of 140-150 days. In mineral resources, there are coal, petroleum, limestone, zeolite, sodium base grease clay and marble etc.

In industries, machine building takes the main position, beside which there are foodstuff, textile, building materials, metallurgy and medicine etc. Its vehicle building takes the lead in the country, which is one of the main centers of manufacturing heavy-duty lorry, sedan car, railway-carriage and city track vehicle, while the tractor building and pharmacy have occupied a certain position in the country as well. In agriculture, wheat, soybean, sorghum, maize, sunflower and different kinds of hemp take the main position. Sika deer is famous here, while the output of pilose antler takes the lead in the whole country.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 2

T交通及名胜 ransportation and Interest Places

Changchun city is the important rail hub in the middle part of northeast China. The highway communication is convenient. It has periodic scheduled flight with 20 odd cities in the country.

Roads and streets of Changchun city are well laid out with green shade, having the reputation of "forest city". It is cool in summer with pleasant weather, hence a famous summer resort, while in winter ice and snow freeze hundreds of miles, which are fit for holding sports on ice. Jingyuetan (neat moon lake) scenic area is the major area of scenic beauty of Sate. Besides, there are other places of historic interest and scenic beauty like Ancient Pagoda of the Liao Dynasty and historic relics of Treasure Mountain, Nanshan, etc.

Paragraph 3

E经济 conomy

Changchun has a complete industrial system with 128 categories and over 3 000 types of products. As Changchun's main industry, the manufacturing of transportation facilities and machinery such as those of automobile, passenger train, and tractor has developed very well and its total output constitutes, respectively, 1/5, 1/2, and 1/10 of that of the nation's. The industries such as machinery, electronics, optics, chemistry, medicine, textile, metallurgy, building materials and foodstuffs all assume their own features and advantages.

Paragraph 4

H历史 istory

Changchun is a new city with only about 200 years of history. Chang-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

chun started as a minor trading town. In the year of 1800, Emperor Jiaqing of Qing Dynasty selected a small village on the east bank of the Yitong River and named it as "Changchun Ting", and in the year of 1889, it was promoted as "Changchun Fu".

It expanded rapidly as the junction of the Japanese-owned South Manchurian Railway and the Russian-owned Chinese Eastern Railway which had different rail gauges, as well as permit licences, from 1905-1935. Changchun had railway repair shops and branch lines originating in Changchun extended into Korea and Inner Mongolia.

In 1932, moving from Jilin city (Kirin city) 200 km to the east, Changchun became the capital of Manchukuo, a state in Manchuria led by Pu Yi with the help from Japan, and which existed from 1931 to 1945. Then known as Xinjing (Pinyin), the capital was a well-planned city with broad avenues and modern public works. The city underwent rapid expansion in both its economy and infrastructures.

Severely damaged during World War Ⅱ, it was invaded by the Soviet Red Army in 1945. The Russians maintained a presence in the city after the Chinese civil war until 1956. Kuomintang forces occupied the city in 1946, but were unable to hold the countryside against Chinese Communist forces. The city fell to the communists in 1948 after a 12-month-long siege by the People's Liberation Army. Renamed Changchun by the People's Repubic of China government, it became the capital of Jilin in 1954. From the 1950s, it was designated to become a center for China's automotive industry. The famous Red Flag limousines were made in Changchun as were the Liberation (Jiefang) trucks based on a Ford model used in Russia who supplied much of the early manufacturing machinery.

Changchun will host the 2007 Winter Asian Games.

Paragraph 5

经济技术开发区
Economic and Technological Development Zone

Changchun Economic and Technological Development Zone lies in the

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

hinterland of Northeast Plain and on the east of Jing Yue Tan Forest Park (the largest artificial forest park in Asia), with Yitong River on the west. Changchun, the provincial capital of Jinlin province, lies in the center of the northeastern Asian economic ring surrounding the Japanese Sea. The city is also in the middle of the city belt in the heart of Northeast Plain, which is composed of over 100 cities and towns with such metropolises as Dalian, Shenyang, Changchun and Harbin at the core.

Changchun has 25 universities and colleges, 102 independent institutions of R&D and technological development, 23 members of Chinese Academy of Sciences and Academy of Engineering, and 469 000 different professional technicians. In addition, the Zone owns Changchun Senior Vocational Poly-tech Institute, the largest vocational training base in the nation.

The Zone is devoted to developing the 5 leading industries known as automotive parts and components, photoelectric information, bio-pharmaceutical, fine processing of foods, and new building materials. In particular, hi-tech and high value-added projects account for over 80 percent of the total.

Paragraph 6

China Changchun Optoelectronic Exposition 长春光电博览会

The 20th Congress of the International Commission for Optics was held in Changchun, China, 21-26 August 2005. Usually held every three years, in the past half a century, the Olympia of optics community has been contributing to coordination among all countries' optical scientists by creating an occasion of close contact. For the first time the international conference takes place in China, a country whose optics industry has been advancing rapidly in recent years. This conference was composed of two parts, sessions and expositions. Resources of Intelligence 1 000 optoelectronic scientists reputed around world, 4 Nobel Prize winners, the President of ICO and all members of the commission was present at the Congress 20 with at-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

tendance of over 50 000 engineers and industrialists from over 40 countries. Thanks to a massive participation of 600 enterprises from the world and devoting support from Chinese government, the Congress, to be conducted at 13 venues of tropical sessions and to occupy an exhibiting area of 20 000 square meters, was expected to give all participating enterprises a win-win situation. Platform for Communications International professionals present at conference confered analysis of the industry's prospective. Cooperation between enterprises and exploration into new realms of markets will be achieved here. The academic exchange, occurring simultaneously at the Expo, will encounter the science with its users.

Paragraph 7

电影城 Changchun's Film City

Took a trip down to the movie city on Red Flag Street the other day, if only to satisfy my own curiosity as I pass this place every day. Well, I can tell you that a more appropriate translation would be "Changchun film studios" as that's what it actually is! Just a large, red-brick glorified warehouse with a large statue of the Chairman out front; nothing more to it. The place is pretty old and dilapidated, a shadow of its former self, but still quite an interesting place to visit—I managed to walk around the complex without buying an entrance ticket (through luck more than judgment, I just happened to walk in the wrong way), and in hindsight I don't think it's worth an admission fee.

If you are interested in the history of Chinese film making, particularly some of the very early TV productions, then you may find this place a gold mine of information, but otherwise, miss it. There is another place at the very edge of the city, with a similar name; Changchun Film Century City which is like a theme park based on films but it's pretty expensive—over 100 Yuan each. Might go there next week. Perhaps something more worth seeing is the collection of old aeroplanes and military hardware stored in the courtyard. Most of it is left over from WW Ⅱ and is Japanese or Russian made, also there's an old Chinese fighter jet rusting away in the car park!

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Cultural Links
文化链接

民间艺术——二人转

二人转是诞生于东北劳动人民中间的综合艺术，是一朵土色土香的艺术之花。吉林的二人转有着悠久的历史。早在几百年前，二人转就以它灵活、明快的方式活跃在长白山狩猎、挖参、淘金人的窝棚和“大房子”里，深受老百姓的喜爱。

二人转名曰“二人转”，其实不单单是仅有两个人，它在形成之后就有了“单出头”、“二人转”和“拉场戏”三个分支。经过长时间的发展，二人转的艺术表演手段得以丰富和发展，逐渐形成了独有的技巧——“四功一绝”，即唱、说、拉(做)、舞功的绝技。

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

ice sculptures 冰雕
ski 滑冰
sedan car 轿车
Changchun Film Century City
长影世纪城
WW Ⅱ 第二次世界大战
rail hub 铁路枢纽
Last Emperor 末代皇帝
Songhua River 松花江
clay 黏土
mineral resource 矿产资源
Children's Park 儿童公园
Winter sports 滑雪运动
Shangri-La Hotel
长春香格里拉大饭店
Changchun Noble Hotel
长春名门饭店
Cappuccino Workshop
卡布基诺作坊
French Bakery 红磨坊
Xanadu 仙乐都
Ferry Port Bar 渡口酒吧
Jilin University China-Japan Union Hospital 吉林大学中日联谊医院
Third Affiliated Hospital of Bethune University Of Medical Science
白求恩医科大学第三临床学院
Changchun Economic & Technological Development Zone
长春经济技术开发区
Changchun High-Tech Industrial Development Zone
长春高科技产业开发区

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 3 沈阳 Shenyang

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Shengyang today is an industrial and cultural center of Liaoning.
   沈阳现在是辽宁省的工业和文化中心。
2. The main shopping area in Shenyang is around the Dong Ya Commercial Square.
   沈阳主要的商业区在东亚商业广场附近。
3. No matter whether you choose a five-star, four-star or three-star hotel, you are sure to receive excellent service that will be certain to make you feel both welcome and at home.
   不管你选择了五星、四星级还是三星级饭店，你们都一定会得到很好的服务，并且这些服务一定会令你觉得亲切而热情。
4. Thus, many unique snacks originate here, such as Muslim and Manchu snacks.
   因此，许多独特小吃发源于这里，如回族和满族小吃。
5. You can also find fast food, like KFC, pizza hut, etc.
   你也可以找到快餐店，像肯德基、必胜客等。
6. After years of tradition and innovation, Daqinghua dumplings still keep the distinctive Manchu flavor and delicious taste.
   经过多年的发扬和创新，大清花饺子依然保持着满族独特风味。
7. Foodwise, Shenyang has a rich and multi-faceted culinary heritage foodwise.
   在饮食方面沈阳拥有丰富而多元化的饮食文化。
8. If you want to take a taxi to get to Shenyang downtown area, from railway station it will cost you about 50 Yuan.
   如果你要坐的士从火车站去沈阳闹市区，车费约 50 元。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

9. Generally speaking trains that start from South Shenyang Train Station reach cities within or near Liaoning Province; while trains that start from North Shenyang Railway Station can arrive at most cities in China, like Beijing, Shanghai, Xi'an, and so on.
一般而言,沈阳南站列车到达辽宁省内城市或附近地区;而从沈阳北站的列车可到达中国各大的城市,如北京、上海、西安,等等。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

B 简介 rief Introduction

Shenyang, the largest city in Northeast China, is the political, economic, and cultural center of Liaoning Province. It is also an important industrial base and a famous historical city. As the host city of the 2006 International Horticultural Exposition and venue for the football (soccer) matches of the 2008 Beijing Olympic Games, Shenyang will soon be the focus of worldwide attention.

Shenyang is located in the central part of Liaoning Province. Its climate is relatively dry most of the year in precipitation during the summer months due to the influence of monsoons. Temperatures vary as much as 10 degrees Celsius from daytime to night, and in winter they can drop below 0 degrees Celsius, so the smart traveler will plan to dress in layers.

Paragraph 2

H 历史 istory

The city's name, Shenyang, comes from the old name of the Hun River on the city's south side, which used to be called Shen River. Archaeological findings show that human beings resided in present day Shenyang as early

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

as 7 200 years ago. City of Shenyang was first established by Qinkai, a general of Yan state in the Warring States period about 300 BC. It was named as Houcheng at that time. During the Tang Dynasty, it became the Gaimou perfecture. It became the Shen perfeture (沈州) in the Jin Dynasty and ShenyangLu in the Yuan Dynasty. During the Ming Dynasty, it became Shenyang Zhongwei.

In 1625 the Manchu leader Nurhaci moved his capital to Shenyang, or Simiyan as it is called in Manchu. The official name was changed to Shengjing(盛京) in Chinese, or Mukden in Manchu 1634. The name derives from the Manchu word, mukdembi, meaning "to rise", and this is reflected by its Chinese name, which means "rising capital". Shenyang remained the capital of the Qing Dynasty until the overthrow of the Ming dynasty, and relocation of the capital to Beijing in 1644. However, it retained considerable prestige as the older capital, treasures of the royal house were kept at its palaces, and the tombs of the early Qing rulers were once among the most famous monuments in China. In 1657', Fengtian Prefecture was established in the Shenyang area, and Fengtian was sometimes used synonymously with Shenyang/Mukden. In 1914, the city changed back to its old name Shenyang. However, Shenyang continued to be known as Mukden in English sources (sometimes spelled Moukden) through much of the 20th century.

With the building of the South Manchurian Railway, Mukden became a Russian stronghold.

During the Russo-Japanese War (1904-1905), Mukden was the site of the Battle of Mukden from on 19 February to 10 March 1905. It was the largest battle of the world when it was fought. Following the Japanese victory, the Japanese concession at Mukden was one of the chief bases for Japanese economic expansion into southern Manchuria. It was also the seat of the Chinese viceroy of the three Manchurian provinces. In the 1920s, Mukden was the capital of the warlord Chang Zuolin, who was killed when his train was blown up near Mukden at a Japanese-guarded railway bridge.

The Mukden Incident (18 September 1931), which gave the Japanese

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

an impetus to create the Manchukuo state, took place near Shenyang. During the Manchukuo era (1932—1945) the city was called Fengtian again.

Soviet forces occupied Shenyang in early August 1945 on the surrender of Japan. The Soviets were replaced by the Nationalist Chinese, who were flown in on US transport planes. During the Chinese Civil War, Shenyang remained a Kuomintang stronghold from 1946—1948, although the Chinese communists controlled the surrounding countryside. It was captured by the communists on 30 October 1948 following a series of offensives. Since 1949, Shenyang developed into a major industrial center. Many of the major industrial companies have their headquarters located in Shenyang, such as Brilliance Auto and their production plants. Also the Shenyang Aviation Company which produces airplanes for civilian uses as well as for military for the PLAAF.

Paragraph 3

E 少数民族 thnic

Shenyang has 38 of China's 56 recognized ethnic groups, including the Han Chinese majority that make up 91.26% of Shenyang's population.

The 37 minority groups are Manchu (满族), Korean (朝鲜族), Muslim Hui (回族), Xibe (锡伯族), Mongolian (蒙古族), Zhuang (壮族), Miao (苗族), Tujia (土家族), Dong (侗族), Daur (达斡尔族), Bai (白族), Uygur (维吾尔族), Tibetan (藏族), Yi (彝族), Taiwanese Aboriginal People (高山族), She (畲族), Buyi (布依族), Yao (瑶族), Akha (哈尼族), Kazak (哈萨克族), Dai (傣族), Li (黎族), Shui (水族), Nakhi (纳西族), Jingpo (景颇族), Kyrgyz (柯尔克孜族), Tu (土族), Mulam (仫佬族), Qiang (羌族) Maonan (毛南族), Gelao (仡佬族), Russian (俄罗斯族), Evenks (鄂温克族), Tatar (塔塔尔族), Oroqen (鄂伦春族), Nanai (赫哲族), Lhoba (珞巴族). Most of these groups are not native to the Shenyang area, but some, like the Manchus and the Xibe, are.

There is a very strong Korean influence in the city making Korean the

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

second most spoken language in Shenyang.

Paragraph 4

S购物中心 Shopping Areas

A busy commercial thoroughfare. There are several shopping areas in Shenyang. One of the districts, Taiyuan Street, features western-style shopping and dining, including a Wal-mart, a Pizza Hut (which is very different from those located in North America since it is designed for premium dining, possessing an upscale interior design and a much large staff), consumer electronics stores, and a number of large, multi-story department stores selling products from around the world.

Another area, Wu'ai Market, features a large multi-story shopping center with a size comparable to that of many city blocks. It contains hundreds, if not thousands, of mini or boutique stores that open very early in the morning and close in the early afternoon. It is famous for cheap clothes and household stuff. A large area of the market moved inside a new building in 2005. In early 2006 it shifted its opening times by one and a half hours so to open and close later.

There is also another area located in the center of the city, Middle Street, which is similar to Taiyuan Street. It features one of the largest department stores in Shenyang.

There are also a number of large superstores located throughout the city that sells everything from meat and dairy to clothes and electronics.

Paragraph 5

T交通 Transportation

Shenyang Taoxian International Airport is the largest in northeast China. Speedway connects Shenyang and the airport, which makes the transportation rather convenient. Airlines here can reach 58 domestic cities and foreign cities in Korea, Japan, Russia, Thailand, America, France and

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Australia. Therefore Shenyang is the third city in China (following Beijing and Shanghai) that offers air passage across Europe, America and Oceania. Addressor of China Southern Airline said that before the International Horticultural Exposition they will try to open some other international routes from Shenyang to Amsterdam, New York, San Francisco, Munich, Ho Chi Minh City and so on.

There are aviation regular buses from Shenyang City to the airport. You can get on the busses at the air tickets sales center at Maluwan, No. 117, Zhonghua Lu. The whole journey will take you about 40 minutes and cost you 10 Yuan.

The bus runs every hour. The last bus to the airport is at 19:00 o'clock. The schedules of the buses from the airport to Shenyang City depend on arrival time of planes. No matter when the plane arrives, there is bus waiting for you. You can get on it in front of the waiting hall. If you want to take a taxi to get to Shenyang downtown area, it will cost you about 50 Yuan.

As one of the largest transition stations, Shenyang has two railway stations altogether. One is located on the division line of Heping District and Tiexi New District which is called Shenyang Train Station (South Shenyang Train Station). The other stands on the boundary line of Shenhe District and Huanggu District. It is named North Shenyang Railway Station. Generally speaking trains that start from South Shenyang Train Station reach cities within or near Liaoning Province; while trains that start from North Shenyang Railway Station can arrive at most cities in China, like Beijing, Shanghai, Xi'an, and so on. No. 203, 216, 502, 602, etc. city buses can bridge the two stations for your convenience. Usually you can buy train tickets five days in advance in the two stations.

Paragraph 6

A 沈阳档案局 Archives Bureau

Shenyang Archives Bureau came into existence in 1959, it was originally named Shenyang Archives Supervisal Department as the administration

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

organization of Shenyang archives. Shenyang Archives established in May 1960 as the keeping base of the permanent archives.

Shenyang Archives Bureau established in April 1986, approved by Shenyang Committee of CPC and Shenyang Municipal Government, comprised 22 people, it directly affiliated to Shenyang Municipal Government and led by Shenyang Committee of CPC and Shenyang Municipal Government, mainly by Shenyang Committee of CPC. Shenyang Archives is a institution of Shenyang Archives Bureau and is administrated by Shenyang Archives Bureau.

Approved by Shenyang Committee of CPC and Shenyang Municipal Government, Shenyang Archives and Shenyang Archives Bureau were combinated in November 1996 to be one unit of bureau organizational system and directly affiliated to Shenyang Municipal Government.

Paragraph 7

沈阳的住宿条件
Living in Shenyang

Shenyang's hotel industry has developed rapidly in recent years. No matter whether you choose a five-star, four-star or three-star hotel, you are sure to receive excellent service that will be certain to make you feel both welcome and at home.

Middle range and budget hotels play a major role in Shenyang's accommodation listings and most of them are located in the city center. As well as very acceptable levels of accommodation, you can enjoy satisfying meals in the good clean restaurants in these hotels serving Chinese and western cuisine, and buffet style dinners. There is also a selection of guest houses and hostels for those who prefer to stay elsewhere than in the more costly hotels. Although they are not so elaborate, the facilities provided by these establishments are both clean and comfortable. So, it is true to say that you can find satisfactory lodging here in Shenyang whatever your preference may be.

Generally speaking, the top grade hotels are along the route to the air-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

port; although many star-rated hotels can be found in and around Qingnian Dajie, an area that is quiet, clean and away from the hustle and bustle of the city centre. What's more Qingnian Dajie is near to the Hun He (Hun River), Shenyang's moat; therefore fresh air and beautiful scenery are two other blessings to be enjoyed at these hotels. A large number of hotels of varying standards are distributed throughout the areas around Shenyang Train Station (South Shenyang Train Station) and North Shenyang Railway Station.

There are some chain hostels in Shenyang providing cheap and clean accommodation especially for backpackers, such as the Home Inn. In addition university residences are available. These all cost around CNY 100 for a standard room.

Cultural Links
文化链接

沈阳市

沈阳市位于辽河平原中部,浑河北岸,是辽宁省省会,全省政治、经济、文化、交通中心。现辖新民市、法库县、辽中县和康平县。

沈阳是我国历史文化名城之一,西汉已初具规模,称侯城县。1625 年后金努尔哈赤在此建都,称盛京。1644 年盛京改为奉天。辛亥革命后,1928 年改称沈阳。1931 年沈阳沦为帝国主义殖民地。1948 年 11 月 2 日沈阳解放。

沈阳是以机电、重型机器制造为主的、我国东北最大的工业城市。沈阳是东北三省与关内联系的重要交通枢纽,是东北地区最大的客、货运航空港。名胜古迹主要有故宫、北陵和东陵等。

关于努尔哈赤定都沈阳城有一段传说:

据说老罕王努尔哈赤在老家新宾开国创业,从二十多岁一直打到五十多岁,不但周围的部落都归顺了他,连明朝的几十万大军也被打得落花流水,他手下的军队越来越多,新宾的小山沟已经快装不下了。有一天,老罕王召集手下的文官武将到金銮殿商量搬家(迁都)的事,大伙虽然都赞成,但对搬到什么地方去却看法不一。这时候外边来了个风水先生,听说罕王要搬家拿不定主意,就说他有好计策。老罕王一听就叫人把他传上殿来,

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

那位先生说:“我的计策很简单,只要罕王派人到各地都取回一升土,称一称哪里的土分量最重,哪里就是该去的风水宝地。”罕王和大臣们听了,都觉得这个办法不错,于是派出许多人到辽东各地取回了土样,挨个上秤一称,就属辽阳的土最重,一升要比别的城多好几两。于是,老罕王发兵打下辽阳,把国都也搬到了那里。

可在那过了两年,老罕王老觉得心里不大顺当。一是因为辽阳城大汉人多,新来的满族人日子总是过不太平;二是这里往西攻打明朝和蒙古道路远又不方便。心里虽是这样想,但因为没有找到其他更好的地方,老罕王为了稳定人心,一直也没对谁提起这件事。

有一天,他带着八旗兵出城打猎,看见两只凤凰从南往北飞,突然想起人们常说的一句话“凤凰不落无宝之地”,便策马追赶,想知道凤凰到底会落在什么地方。凤凰在天上飞,他骑着马在地上跑,一直往北跟了二百多里,眼瞅着凤凰落到了沈阳城。

罕王进城一看,这座城不大不小,四通八达,真是一块宝地,做新国都正合适。于是第二天返回辽阳后就召集手下大臣,宣布了迁都沈阳的决定。当时辽阳刚建完新城,许多大臣家也刚盖完新房子,突然听说要搬家,心里都有点不愿意。大伙一听老罕王已经金口玉言传下圣旨,也就不敢再说什么,赶忙去回家收拾东西。当天下午,老罕王率领八旗官兵,浩浩荡荡地离开辽阳奔向沈阳。从这以后一直到顺治进关,沈阳就成了大清的国都,老罕王加上他的儿子皇太极,正好在这里坐了二十年江山。

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

Shenyang Imperial Palace 沈阳故宫	Muslim and Manchu snacks 回族和满族小吃
Beiling Park, also known as Zhaoling 北陵,又称昭陵	Shenyang Polytechnic University 沈阳理工大学
Former Residence of Zhang Xueliang 张学良故居	Northeastern University 东北大学
shopping area 商业区	Shenyang Institute of Aeronautical Engineering 沈阳航空工程学院
multi-faceted 多元化的	
culinary heritage 饮食文化	China Medical University

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

中国医科大学
Liaoning University 辽宁大学
Shenyang Architechtural University
沈阳建筑大学
Shenyang Normal University
沈阳师范大学
Shenyang Institute of Chemical Technology 沈阳化工技术学院
Shenyang Medical College
沈阳医学院
Shenyang Agricultural University
沈阳农业大学
Shenyang Pharmaceutical University
沈阳医药大学
Shenyang University 沈阳大学
Shenyang Institute of Physical Education 沈阳体育学院
China Criminal Police University
中国刑事警察大学
Shenyang Institute of Engeering
沈阳工程研究所
Liaoning Administrators College of Police and Justice
辽宁警察和司法行政学院
Liaoning Radio and TV University
辽宁广播电视大学
Shenyang Radio and TV University
沈阳电大
LuXun Academy of Fine Arts
鲁迅美术学院
Liaoning Finance Vocational College
辽宁金融职业学院
Liaoning Economy Vocational College
辽宁经济职业学院
Liaoning Korean Normal School
辽宁朝鲜师范学校
Liaoning Traffic College
辽宁交通学院
Liaoning University of Traditional Chinese Medicine 辽宁中医大学

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 4 大连 Dalian

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Dalian is considered as an ideal place for vacationers.
   大连被誉为理想的度假好去处。
2. Dalian is a beautiful and well-organized city.
   大连市区漂亮而整洁,规划整齐。
3. You can enjoy scuba diving, fishing, and mountaineering in Dalian.
   你可以在大连享受潜水、垂钓、登山之乐。
4. If you want to adventure on Snake Island, you have to apply permission.
   如果要想到蛇岛上去探险,你得申请许可证。
5. By the end of 2005, the total number of foreign-funded enterprises approved in Dalian has amounted to over 10 thousand, which come from over seventy countries and regions.
   到2005年底,共有高达1万多来自七十多个国家和地区外资企业批准在大连投资。
6. Products from Dalian are sold to 170 nations and regions worldwide, and the total import and export volume amounted to US $23.523 billion in 2005, increased by 21.0% than that of the previous year, among which the value of the import was 11.088 billion US dollars, increased by 19.5%, and that of the export reached 12.435 billion US dollars, increased by 22.5%.
   来自大连的产品卖给全球170个国家和地区,而进出口总额达235.23亿美元,2005年较上年上升了21.0%,其中进口值为110.88亿美元,增长了19.5%,而对出口达124.35亿美元,增长了22.5%。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

7. Dalian is the window for northeast China and the gateway to Beijing and Tianjin.
大连是东北地区通往北京和天津的门户。
8. It is backed by the vast hinterland of northeast three provinces and Inner Mongolia whose total population is over 1 million.
它背靠东北三省及内蒙古广阔腹地，人口超过 100 万。
9. The annually held Dalian International Fashion Festival, Dalian Export Commodities Fair and the Dalian International Marathon are greatly influential international fairs and events.
每年举办的大连国际时装节和大连国际马拉松赛是有很大影响力的国际交易活动。
10. The Dalian Municipal Government strives to provide the best business and living environments for foreign businessmen and foreign enterprises.
大连市政府致力为外商和外资企业提供最佳的经商和生活环境。
11. At the beginning of the new century, Dalian has been recognized by economists as one of the five Chinese internationalized cities in the 21st century together with Hong Kong, Beijing, Shanghai and Guangzhou.
在新世纪之初，大连成为经济学家公认的 21 世纪中国除香港、北京、上海、广州以外的五大城市之一。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

B 简介 Brief Introduction

Dalian is located in the southern tip of Liaodong Peninsular and the terminal of Shenda (Shenyang-Dalian) Railway. Its main industries include ship-building, machinery, chemicals, oil refinery, textiles, and food process-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

ing. Dalian Port is a deepwater one, and is one of the important foreign trade ports of China. The city is blessed with a beautiful environment, favourable location and strong industrial base. Its advantage as a port city has been the most attractive feature for overseas investors. Dalian tries to upgrade its port and build itself into a regional and international shipping centre.

Dalian is one of the most pleasant and prosperous cities in China. With only 100 years or so of history, it spent more than half a century under colonial rule, first under the Russians and then under the Japanese, who ruled the city for 40 years. Today's Dalian, surrounded on three sides by the Bohai Seaand Yellow Sea, incorporates the major seaport town at the southwestern tip of the Liaodong peninsula (previously known as Port Arthur) and Dalian port on Korea Bay. The city is free of ice all year round and features an important naval base, which guards the entrance to the gulf of Bohai, and the main commercial port for industrialized northeast China.

Dalian is connected by pipeline to the productive Daqing oil field and since the petroleum-exporting point in the country. It can accommodate supertankers and also boasts the largest shipbuilding yards in the country.

Paragraph 2

H历史 istory

As early as 6000 years ago, our ancestors first exploited Dalian region. In Qin and Han period (221BC-220AD), Dalian region was under the jurisdiction of Liaodong county. In the early period of Tang Dynasty (618-907), Dalian region was under the jurisdiction of Andong Prefecture in Jili state, and in Liao Dynasty (916-1125), it was under the jurisdiction of Dong Jing Tong Liaoyang county. Dalian was named Sanshan in the period of Weijin (220-420), San Shanpu in Tang Dynasty (618-907), Sanshan Seaport in Ming Dynasty (1368-1644) and Qing Niwakou in Qing Dynasty (1644-1911). In the 1880's, Qing government constructed loading bridges and fortifications with built-in cannons, and set up mine camps in the

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

northern coast of Dalian gulf, making it become a small town. After the invasion and occupation of Russia, the city was called Qing Niwa and was renamed Dalian in 1899. During the 1st and 2nd Opium War, Dalian was invaded and harassed by the British army. As the main battlefield of the Sino-Japanese War of 1894-1895 and Japanese-Russian War, Dalian suffered great calamity in these two wars in modern history. Consequently, Dalian became Russian and Japanese colony for nearly half a century, meanwhile under the Japanese colonial rule for 40 years. The unconditional surrender of Japan on August of 1945 marks the liberation of Dalian in the anti-fascist war, thus ends 40 years' colonial rule over the city. On September of the same year, the Preparatory Committee of Dalian Workers' Union was founded. On October, the northeast bureau of the Communist Party of China appointed Mr. Hanguan secretary of the CPC Dalian Committee, and the CPC Dalian Committee and Dalian municipal government were founded. On July of 1946, the CPC Dalian Committee was reorganized into the CPC Lüda committee. From 1949 to 1956, the socialist transformation was almost finished. From 1957 to 1966, the all-around socialist construction started. From 1966 to 1976, Dalian experienced the Cultural Revolution. After 1976, Dalian entered the new period of socialist modernization construction. In 1984, Dalian was approved by the State Council to be the coastal open-up city and was designated as the city with separate economic plan in 1985, enjoying provincial level decision-making authority.

Paragraph 3

Geographical Situation 地理状况

On the east coast of Eurasia and the southern tip of Liaodong peninsular in northeast China, Dalian stretches from 120°58′ to 123°31′ east longitude and 38°43′ to 40°10′ north latitude, with the Yellow Sea on the east, Bohai Sea on the west, facing the Shandong peninsular across the sea on the south and backed up by the vast Northeast Plain on the north. Dalian is the marine gateway of northeast China, North China, East China and the

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

whole world. It is also an important port, and a trade, industry and tourism city. Dalian covers an area of 12 574 square kilometers, among which 2 415 square kilometers of area is the old city. This area abounds with mountains and hills, while plains and lowlands are rarely seen. The terrain, high and broad on the north, low and narrow on the south, tilts to the Yellow Sea on the southeast and the Bohai Sea on the northwest from the center. The region which faces the Yellow Sea is long and gentle. The Qianshan Mountain range of Chang Baishan Mountain system passes through the whole region from north to south. Mountain regions and long eroded foothills are widely dispersed within the region. Plains and lowlands are only interspersed near the confluence and in some valleys.

Paragraph 4

W水资源 ater Resources

There are mainly two large river systems, the Yellow Sea system and the Bohai Sea system. The large rivers which flow into the Yellow Sea are Biliu River, Yingna River, Zhuanghe River, Xiezi River, Dasha River, Dengsha River, Qingshui River, and Malan River, etc. while the main rivers which flow into the Bohai Sea are Fuzhou River, Li Guancun River, San Shilipu River. Among them, the largest one is Biliu River, the source river of cross-valley water diversion. In addition, there are more than 200 small rivers. The total amount of fresh water resource is 3.786 billion cubic meters, among which 3.42 billion cubic meters of water is ground water, 88.4 million cubic meters of water is underground water and 58 million cubic meters of water is shared by them both.

Paragraph 5

基础设施 nfrastructure

The annual cargo handling capacity of Dalian port is 145.162 million tons, the container handling capacity is 2.2112 million TEU. The passenger

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

volume of Dalian airport is 4. 614 million person-time, the cargo and mail handling capacity is 118 thousand tons, and it has opened over 88 air routes, among them 17 are international routes, including Dalian to Japan, Korea, Russia and Hong Kong. The Dalian's expressway which has linked Shenyang, Beijing, Changchun and Harbin has the mileage of 244 kilometers. There are totally 600 million Cubic meters of water reserve in the over a dozen of reservoirs dispersed across Biliu River and Yingna River. The daily water supply capacity is 1. 3 million tons with 900 thousand tons of water being actually utilized. With the increasing demand for the future development of the city, Dalian will divert water from Dayang River and Yalu River. Sufficient supply of power and gas can meet the requirements of economic development.

Paragraph 6

F财经 inance

Eight overseas banks have set up operating branches, and Six foreign financial institutions have set up offices in Dalian.

U. F. J. Bank Ltd. Dalian Branch
The Yamaguchi Bank, Ltd. Dalian Branch
The Bank of Tokyo-Mitsubishi, Ltd. Dalian Branch
Mizuho Corporate Bank Dalian Branch
NANYANG Commercial Bank Dalian Branch
The Bank of East Asia, Ltd. Dalian Branch
HSBC Dalian Branch
Korea Exchange Bank Dalian Branch
Sumitomo Mitsui Banking Corporation Dalian Representative Office
Standard Chartered Bank Dalian Branch
BNP-Paribas international finance Dalian Representative Office
The Bank of Fukuoka, Ltd. Dalian Representative Office
The San-in Godo Bank, Ltd. Dalian Representative Office
JCB Internatinal Co. , Ltd. Dalian Representative Office

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 7

对外优惠政策
Preferential Policies for Foreign Investors

State regulations provide that the income tax for enterprises with foreign investment is 30% of the taxable income, yet for those enterprises operating within the jurisdiction of Dalian municipality enjoys a favorable tax rate of 24%, and enterprises operating within those pilot zones enjoys an even more favorable rate of 15%.

Any enterprise with foreign investment of a production nature scheduled to operate for a period of not less than ten years shall, from the year beginning to make profit, be exempted from income tax in the first and second years and allowed a fifty percent reduction in the third to fifth years. These enterprises shall also be exempted from local income tax, which is 3% of the taxable income for seven years.

For those enterprises that export their products, after the above favorable treatment period expires, the rate of corporate income tax shall be 12% if 70% or more of their total product value in the year are exported, and this rate is 10% for enterprises in the Pilot Zones.

Paragraph 8

鼓励对外投资区域
Areas Where Foreign Investment is Encouraged

Electronic information technology—the development and manufacture of software, network, optical communication, digital audio and video products, computer peripheral equipment and other components, new video products and micro electronic components.

Bio-engineering-bio-pharmaceutical, medical material, functional food, bio-pesticide and fertilizer, bio-chemical material, bio-treatment of polluted water, genetic engineering and tissue engineering.

Environment protection industry-solid waste treatment, purification by desulphurization, waste water treatment, compressing of high density or-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

ganic waste water and mud, manufacturing of environment protection facilities.

Paragraph 9

D 大连高新技术产业园区 alian Hi-Tech Industrial Park

Dalian Hi-Tech Industrial Park is a national Industrial Park approved by the State Council in 1991, it has three characteristics:

The fastest developing Overseas Students Park in China with the best infrastructure. Approved by the Ministry of Personnel, the park hosts Chinese Overseas Students Pioneering Week at the end of June and the beginning of July each year.

Chinese first class software park of international standard, which is Software export base approved by the Ministry of Science and Technology. The largest and best training institute for software in China-NEUSOFT Institute of Information Technology is located there.

Dalian DD Port (Digital and DNA) guided by advanced concept. Chinese Academy of Sciences has set up the Hi-Tech Industrial Incubation Fund within the DD Port and encourages their affiliating institutions to localize their achievements to the port, they have also established talents training base in the port.

Cultural Links
文化链接

大连的传说

从前,有两个穷苦的孩子,一个叫大海,一个叫小妹,都给财主干活。两个人长大后相爱了,悄悄来到一个三面环海,一面临山的山坡住下。一天他们得到一个可以自动流出苞米粒的褡裢。老财主知道后就来争夺,结果把褡裢挣断了。大海和小妹各抓住半截褡裢飞向空中,越飞越高,褡裢也越来越大,在空中变成两座大山,轰隆一声,大山落了下来,把财主和狗腿子压在下面。褡裢两头变成了两座大山,其间连着一条狭长的陆地,中

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

间环抱着一个大海湾，人们把这里称为“褡裢”，后来叫白了变成“大连”。

Vocabulary 妙词连珠

Dalian Golden Pebble Beach National Tourist Resort 大连金石滩国家旅游度假区
Dalian Xinghai Square Scenic Spot 大连星海广场景区
Dalian Forest Zoo 大连森林动物园
Dalian Hutan Amusement Park 大连虎滩乐园
Dalian Labour Park 大连劳动公园
Dalian People's Square 大连人民广场
Dalian Haizhiyun Square 大连海之韵广场
Dalian Shengya Marine World 大连圣亚海洋世界
Dalian Bangchuidao Scenic Spot 大连棒槌岛景区
Zhuanghe Bingyugou Provincial-Level Tourist Resort 庄河冰峪沟省级旅游度假区
fine natural harbor 优良天然港口
advantageous geographic location 地理位置优越
pleasant climate 宜人的气候
rich natural resources 自然资源丰富
vast hinterland and market 广阔腹地和市场
well-established infrastructures 完善的基础设施
efficient and enlightened government 高效、开明的政府
strong scientific and technical capability 强大的科学和技术能力
internationalized metropolis culture 国际化大都市的文化
first class living environment 一流的生活环境
low operation cost 运行成本低
strong economic growth 经济增长强劲
stable and safe economic environment 稳定和安全的经济
The Development Zone 开发区
The Free Trade Zone 保税区
The Hi-Tech Industrial Zone 高新技术产业园区

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

4 西北地区 Northwest China

Unit 1 乌鲁木齐 Urumqi

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Urumqi is surrounded on three sides by mountains.
   乌鲁木齐三面环山。
2. Xinjiang produces oil, ketchup, sheep, pears, grapes and grain.
   新疆出产石油、番茄酱、绵羊、珍珠、葡萄和谷物。
3. Urumqi's attractions are its people and nearby scenery.
   乌鲁木齐吸引人之处在于它的人民和附近的景区。
4. Turpan's grapes are very sweet with a 15% —20% sugar content.
   吐鲁番的葡萄很甜，含糖量在15%—20%之间。
5. Urumqi city is the capital of Xinjiang Autonomous Region and the center of politics, economy and culture of Xinjiang.
   乌鲁木齐是新疆自治区的首府、政治经济文化中心。
6. Urumqi city located in the middle-northern of Tianshan, the south edge of Zhunger Basins.
   乌鲁木齐位于天山中北部，准噶尔盆地南部。
7. Urumqi is a multi-national city, where there are 43 ethnic groups headed by the Han, the Uygur, the Kazak, the Hui, the Mongolian and etc.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

乌鲁木齐是个多民族共同居住的城市。有汉、维吾尔、哈萨克、回族、蒙古族为主的43个民族组成。

8. The distribution of population is characteristic of"Big City, Small Suburbs", which the agricultural population only makes up 13 percent of the total one.
人口分布的特点是"大城市、小郊区"其中农业人口只占人口总数的13%.

9. Urumqi has plenty of natural resource in its jurisdiction.
乌鲁木齐市拥有丰富的天然资源。

10. There are over 10 billion tons of coal reserves in underground.
地下有超过一百亿吨的煤炭储量。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

B 简介 rief Introduction

Urumqi city is the capital of Xinjiang Autonomous Region and the center of politics, economy and culture of Xinjiang. It also is the communications pivot of connecting with Xinjiang and inland provinces, and now it has become the window of exchange for economy culture and the important door of expending the opening to western of China. Urumqi city located in the middle-northern of Tianshan, the south edge of Zhunger Basins, The average elevation of Urumqi city is 800 meters, belongs to semiarid continental climate of middle temperate zone, annual temperature is 6.4℃ average and has 236mm of average annual precipitation. The city has jurisdiction over seven zones and one county, the total area is 12 000 square kilometers, among which the city program area is 1 600 square kilometers and the established area is 82 square kilometers. Urumqi is a multi-national city, where there are 43 ethnic groups headed by the Han, the Uygur, the

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Kazak, the Hui, the Mongolian and etc, with a total population is 1 548 thousands up to the end of 1998 year, of which minority nationality makes up 27.3 percent. The distribution of population is characteristic of "Big City, Small Suburbs", which the agricultural population only makes up 13 percent of the total one.

Paragraph 2

N自然资源 atural Resources

Urumqi has plenty of natural resource in its jurisdiction. The area of glacier and never-melting snows covered on the peaks of Tianshan Mountains is 164 K ㎡. Their storage of water in solid is 6.2 billion stere, and it is called Solid Water Reservoir and Source of life. Urumqi lies in the middle of one of the China's super-large coal fields: the Zhunggar Coal Field, and it situates in the center of some oil field, such as the eastern oil field of Zhunger Basin in its northern, the Kelamayi oil field in it western and the Tu Ha oil field in its eastern, so, Urumqi is called as "coal ship on the oil sea" and "city on the coal field". There are over 10 billion tons of coal reserves in underground. The exploitable coal seam is more than 80 meters in thickness. The coal is good in quality and different in variety. The Salt Lake is rich in minerals. The deposits of salt and mirabilite are over 100 million tons. The minerals resources of gypsum, oil shale, phosphorus, iron, copper, uranium, manganese and gold etc. are quite notable. The total area of the fertile and cultivated land is 980 000 mu(65 333 hectares). The available natural grass land is 9.63 million. The forest covers an area of 1.35 million mu(900 000 hectares). The water area is about 80,000 mu (5 333 hectares). Urumqi abounds with leral crops, grains, vegetable oil, vegetables, melons, fruits, grapes, hops and there are more than 300 kinds of medical herbs growing in the fields and mountains, such as snow lotus flower(suassurea), boxthorn, fritillary asafetida. Thirty- three breeds of livestock, fowls and 10 species of fishes are living and breeding here. The abundant energy of sunlight, heat and wind are waiting to be exploi-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

ted. The energy of solar radiation and efficient wind is 130 kcal/c ㎡ and 2—3kW/㎡. Oil and natural gas reserve a great deal in the jurisdiction of Urumqi and the three large basins it borders. The advantages of the solo-owned and plentiful resources make Urumqi play an important role in the country.

Paragraph 3

H历史 istory

Urumqi means " A beautiful Pasture land " in ancient Mongolian used by the Junggar tribe. 2 000 years ago it was once an important town on the new northern route of the Silk Road, which made important contribution in promoting Sino-foreign economic & cultural exchanges. During the 22nd year of the Zhenguan's reign in the Tang Dynasty, 648 AD, the Tang government set up the town of Luntai in the ancient town seat of Urabo, which is 10 kilometers away from the southern suburb of Urumqi nowadays. The Ancient Luntai Town, which played quite significant a role on the new northern route of Silk Road in the Tang Dynasty, was the only town of tax collection, the only town of management, the town of supply and the first town as well. In the time of Qing Dynasty (AD 1763), the emperor Qianlong named the expanded city as "Dihua". UP to AD 1884, another emperor Guangxu put up Xinjiang as a Province and the Dihua city as the capital of Xinjiang. After the founding of the people's Republic of China, by Feb. 1, 1954, the city name was restored to its original meaning e. g. Urumqi. Urumqi has one county and seven districts under her jurisdiction. Such as Urumqi county, Tianshan District, Sharyibark District, Toutunhe District, Shuimogou District, Xinshi District, Dongshan District, Nanshan Mine District.

Paragraph 4

E经济发展 conomic Development

Since the foundation of People's Republic of China and especially the

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Third Plenary Session of the Eleventh Central Committee, under the correctly leading of People's government and Party Committee of autonomous region, every nation people of Urumqi city Persisted in observing the guiding of Mr. Deng's socialist theory of constructing owning Chinese feature, performing the party's basic way, deepening reformation, expanding open Policy and promoting the economical and social development, the face of city has hugely changed. In the year of 1992, our city entered the ranks "China 50 strongest city of synthetic economical strength", the position is 24th. In the year of 1998, the city fulfilled the total output value reached RMB 23.2 billions (presently exchange rate), with fixed price to count, it increased 8% than the year of 1997; the total industry and agriculture output value reached RMB 21.56 billions; the financial income is RMB 2.4 billions, increased 15.45% than the year of 1997.

Urumqi city is the main industry base of Xinjiang, it has set up a more complete industry system taken petrochemical, metallurgy, light textile, machinery, building materials, foods etc. as main part, and there are 3057 enterprises in different kind. Among them, there are 1 694 industry enterprises of above village, 79 middle-large enterprises of possessing leading Position in national economy, and which occupy 40% of the total of Xinjiang. In 1998, the city total industry output value reached RMB 20.9 billion, with fixed price to count, it increased 6.13% than the year of 1997.

Paragraph 5

前景 Future Development

Up to the end of this century, the overall target of national economy and social development of Urumqi will be: to fulfil in an all-round way or to over fulfil the second strategic deployment for the Urumqi's construction of modernization under the prerequisite of taking great pains to optimize the economic structure and raising economic returns, to bring about gross domestic product in the whole city, which will have been increased 8 times as against the year 1980, to bring about per capita GDP which will have been

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

increased over 6 times in the circumstances of controlling population growth within 1.58 million persons, to take the lead in leading a comfortable life for urban residents, to have a preliminary establishment of socialist market economic structure, to bring about basically transformation from Semi-closed Continental economy to open exportoriented economy in all directions, to make great efforts to build Urumqi into a central city of modernization for prosperous economy, prefect function, developed Science and technology, advanced, education, fine environment, national unity and social stability, to make greater contribution for reform, development and stability of Xinjiang and to lay a foundation for carrying out the third strategic target of the 21st century.

On the basis of the over all realization of strategic target by the end of the 20th century, up to in year of 2010, Urumqi will strive to bring about GDP in the whole city, increased over 4 times as against the year 2000, to enable people to lead an even more comfortable life, to form a relatively complete socialist market economic structure, to obviously raise the overall quality and economic returns of national economy, to basically realize the rationalization of the product mix, to receive the excellent education in an all-round way, to further strengthen the construction of socialist spiritual civilization and democracy and legal system, to greatly raise level of social civilization to the urban residents of all nationalities, to preliminarily build into the central city of modernization with greater radiation capacity in the economic circle of the Asian-European continental bridge, to basically bring about coordinative development of economy, society and environment, to realize economic integration of towns and villages. urbanization of the countrysides, to turn the urban district into the center of commercial trade, futures, finance, property deal, information and communication and tourism, mean while to make great efforts to strengthen international competitive capacity, to realize economic internationalization, so that to make the famous western city rich in national characteristic of frontier have the demeanor of international metropolis with modernization and multifunctional pertaining to a region.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 6

独一无二民族特色
Exotic and Unique Ethnic Feature of Urumqi

Urumqi is a city where multiethnic groups of people live in compact of mixed communities. They are the Uygur, Han, Hui, Kazak, Mongolian, Kirgiz, Xibe, totally over 40 ethnic groups of people.

Visitors from other parts of China and abroad are immediately attracted by the city's uniqueness, the strong colorful ethnic life styles and local customs. From architectural complex to family courtyards, from furniture to utensils, from food to clothing, from etiquette of the young to rituals of the old, from marriage customs to funeral rites, at all times and on all occasions, one senses a strong unique ethnicity.

Paragraph 7

旅游资源特色
Unique Tourist Resource

Urumqi is the only road of the north new route on the ancient "Silk Road" of world renown and the land of being gathered together for east-west cultural exchange in history. The ancient city of wulapo is a miniature of silk-road culture. The Repressing-Dragon of Red Hill Tower, The Red Phoenix Facing The Sun pavilion and Yue Wei Cottage etc. reflect history and declare to the visitors. In the landscape of the Heavenly Lake, the ice corrodes lake and the white snow makes a pleasing scene in the natural landscape of Nanshan Mountain, the snowy peaks penetrate into the clouds, with verdant woods. And No. 1 glacier towers aloft just like a pyramid.

The Mukam dance music and the Mexilep dance is like the shaking constellation. Horse racing, lamb tussling etc. look as if being in a dreamland. Modern buildings, sculptures, gardens, amusement parks and holiday villages will make the capital city have the demeanor of the modernized metropolis.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Cultural Links
文化链接

乌鲁木齐的传说

阿弗拉斯亚甫时代有一位伯克，他的手下有四万手艺人，从事着各种各样的行当。其中的四十位生意兴隆，家族繁盛，广受尊敬，因而承担着缴纳赋税、充实国库的职责。四十位巴依忠君爱国，慷慨无私，伯克为他们的精神感动，特意颁布命令，免除百姓四十年的赋税。

自打命令颁布以后，四十位巴依都为百姓减轻了负担而高兴，可是自己身上的负担却不知增加了多少倍，为此他们也禁不住忧虑忡忡。万一生意不佳，收入减少，纳税的任务完不成，国家的财源就会枯竭。

于是，巴依们绞尽脑汁，全力以赴，千方百计改善经营，增加利润，以扩大国库收入。巴依中，有一个沙卡尔在经营上颇有心计，善于通过货物的交换赚取利润，因此，人们给他取了绰号叫约鲁木齐，意思是“商品交换者”。沙卡尔他想离开古老的迪克亚努斯城到别处去建立一个大的市场。于是来到今日的乌鲁木齐这块地方，开了一家客栈，为那些从事东西方贸易的商人们提供一个歇脚的地方。在客栈里，客人们能够得饮食，货物也有了安全保证，为他们旅途顺利、买卖发财提供了有利条件。沙卡尔的善行义举很快传遍四面八方，许多从前走其他路线的商人也改走经过沙卡尔客栈的道路。这样一来，客栈的名气更大了，住宿的客人更加络绎不绝。

听到沙卡尔的神奇经历，伯克深受感动，他上奏皇上，并告知所有臣民，从此以后，这座新城就用其创建者的绰号“约鲁木齐”来命名。在使用的过程中，“约鲁木齐”逐渐被“乌鲁木齐”这一名称所代替。

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

Red Hill 红山	Xinjiang Grand Hotel 新疆大饭店
Hoi Tak Hotel Xinjiang 新疆海德酒店	Qianyuan Hotel 乾元酒店
Yindu Hotel Urumqi 银都酒店	Caravan 绿洲西餐厅
	Kashgar 喀什口清真餐厅

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Panorama 天山阁
People's Park 人民公园
Tianshan Park 天山公园
West Friendship Road 友好西路
Nanchang Road 南昌路
Nanliang Po Road 南梁坡路
ketchup 番茄酱
sheep 绵羊
pears 珍珠
grapes 葡萄
grain 葡萄干
Turpan's grapes 吐鲁番的葡萄
Xinjiang Autonomous Regions
新疆自治区
multi-national city
多民族共同居住的城市

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 2 兰州 Lanzhou

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Lanzhou was called "Gold City" after gold was found here.
   兰州发现金矿后曾被称作"金城"。
2. Lanzhou is situated on the Yellow River.
   兰州横跨黄河。
3. Lanzhou's local specialties include roast piglet, sweet and sour Yellow river carp.
   兰州的风味菜包括烤乳猪和糖醋黄河鲤鱼。
4. People relax in Dongfanghong Square in the evening until midnight.
   人们傍晚在东方红广场休憩直至深夜才离开。
5. Bingling Si Grotoes are 129 km southwest of Lanzhou.
   炳灵寺石窟在兰州城西南 129 公里处。
6. The most spectacular are the Lower Tempte.
   最奇特的景观是下寺。
7. Lanzhou is not only the geometrical center of China but also a center in the northwest in terms of transportation, telecommunication and the Silk Road Tourism Ring.
   兰州不仅是在中国的腹地，而且是在西北的交通运输、电信和丝绸之路旅游圈中心。
8. Lanzhou is a beautiful modern city with both the grand beauty of northern cities and the prettiness of southern cities.
   兰州是一个美丽的现代化城市，既有北方城市的雄伟又有南方城市优美的韵味。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

9. Chengguan, Qilihe, Xigu, Honggu and Anning are the five districts comprising Lanzhou's downtown.
城关、七里河、西固、红古、安宁区组成了兰州市中心。
10. Zhongxin Square, also named Dongfanghong Square is the largest in Lanzhou situated in the central area of the city.
中信广场还叫东方广场位于兰州市中心区，是当地最大的广场。
11. At dusk, standing on the top of Lanshan Mountain, you can have a magnificent view of the Yellow River surrounding the city.
黄昏，站在岚山山顶你可以看见流经兰州的壮观的黄河。
12. Zhongshan Bridge, The First Bridge over the Yellow River, was built in 1907 and completed in 1909.
中山桥，黄河第一桥，始建于 1907 年完成于 1909。
13. The bridge is 250 meters (820 feet) long and 8 meters (26 feet) wide.
桥长 250 米(820 英尺)、宽 8 米(26 英尺)。
14. As the First Bridge over the Yellow River, Zhongshan Bridge is valued highly.
作为黄河第一桥，中山桥有着重要的价值。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

Geography 地理状况

Located inland, Lanzhou has a typical temperate, semi-arid continental monsoon climate. It is dry with plenty of sunshine. Winter is long and chilly with an average temperature of −7.3℃ (18.9℉) while spring is ephemeral with changeable weather. In winter, a warm coat, scarf, gloves, hat, and boots are needed. Summer is short but not too hot with an average temperature of 22.4℃ (72.3℉). A warm coat is a necessity on your trip

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

to Lanzhou since the temperature can drop considerably in the evening. Autumn sees a rapid decrease in temperature. Though historical records show that in some extreme cases the temperature can be as low as −23.1℃ (−9.6℉) and can rise to as high as 39.1℃ (102.4℉), Lanzhou enjoys a favorable climate. The annual precipitation is 328 mm (12.91 inches), which is concentrated during the summer. So an umbrella and raincoat should be packed in your bag if you plan to visit Lanzhou at that time. The best season is usually from May to October when the temperature is most suitable. Other things to carry with you are a bottle of water, and sun protection, especially a lip balm. If local folk customs like festivals appeal to you, winter is also a good tourist season.

Paragraph 2

兰州风貌
Landscape

With mountains in the south and north of the city and the Yellow River flowing from the east to the west, Lanzhou is a beautiful modern city with both the grand beauty of northern cities and the prettiness of southern cities. The Landscape along the Yellow River should not be missed, as Lanzhou is the only provincial city through which the Mother River runs. Whether you choose to roam along the River, to cross the First Bridge over the Yellow River, or to have a cup of eight auspicious teas at the Watermill Park, you will be impressed by Lanzhou with its harmonious combination of the modern and the old.

Paragraph 3

兰州的区域
Lanzhou's District

Chengguan, Qilihe, Xigu, Honggu and Anning are the five districts comprising Lanzhou's downtown. Chengguan District, situated in eastern Lanzhou, is the center of politics, economy, culture, scientific research and transportation. In northwestern Lanzhou, Anning District is the economic

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

development zone as well as the area where most colleges are located. Zhongxin Square, also named Dongfanghong Square is the largest in Lanzhou situated in the central area of the city. There is Dongfanghong Department Store in the south, Guofang Shopping Center in the east and Lanzhou Gym sitting in the west. The square is the daily entertainment place for local people and is also an ideal shopping area for tourists. The popular commercial streets in Lanzhou are mainly Qingyang Lu, Zhongshan Lu, Jiuquan Lu, Zhangye Lu, Yongchang Lu, Qin'an Lu, Longxi Lu and Linxia Lu, etc.

While the natural parks around the city such as Yan Tan Park and Shifogou National Forest Park will restore and refresh you, the White Pagoda Park and the Five-Spring Mountain Park will give you an understanding of the cultural side of Lanzhou.

Paragraph 4

F节日 estivals

Labrang Monastery in Xiahe County holds seven religious festivals annually, with the ones on the first moon and seventh moon being the most famous. The highlight of the 1st moon gathering is the Buddha Unfolding on the 13th day and the Yak Butter Sculpture exhibition on the 15th day. Tourists are welcome at these festivals.

Hua'er Folk Music Festival at Lanhua Mountain, Linxia County is held from the 1st to 6th of the 6th moon every year. Hua'er is a type of folk music. At the Hua'er Festival, Hua'er singers come from the neighboring areas and bring their talent into full play, singing impromptu song after song. This festival is of such importance that all the counties offer tour buses to the Hua'er performances.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 5

夜生活 Nightlife

In spite of its location in northwest China, Lanzhou's unique nightlife compares favorably with that in the coastal cities. Lights blaze along the banks of the Yellow River as they showcase the bridges and excited people. These bubbling people choose their enjoyment from the plentiful options available to them such as: diverse night-snack stands, various types of bars, grotesque nightclubs, romantic cafes, exciting cinemas, nostalgic theaters, etc. These memorable nights in Lanzhou, with its many charming attractions, inspire the departing clients to tell others about their wonderful experiences.

Paragraph 6

兰州牛肉面 Lanzhou Beef Noodles

Lanzhou Beef Noodles (Stretched Noodles) is the most famous local dish in Lanzhou. It was first created during the reign of Emperor Guangxu (1875—1908), Qing Dynasty (1616—1911) and it is now popular all over China. This dish has five main features: clear soup, white radish, red pepper, green caraway and yellow noodles. The noodles can be wide or slim to meet different preferences. Boys like er xi (a little wider) while girls like slim ones, the middle-aged and the old like jiuyezi (leek leaf) and maoxi (slimmer) and scholars prefer slim and jiuyezi. Farmers, soldiers and workers prefer wide or even wider. If a girl or an old man asks for wider noodles or a boy asks for maoxi noodles, it would be rather strange. The noodles have gone beyond food to become a culture.

A bowl of beef noodles costs 2 Yuan and takes only a few minutes to prepare. The chef twists and stretches the dough skillfully and in less than two minutes the noodles are finished. This quick and inexpensive food is undoubtedly the first choice among the locals. There are one or two beef

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

noodles eateries on every street in Lanzhou.

Paragraph 7

G 甘肃博物馆 ansu Provincial Museum

If you have an interest in local history, Gansu Provincial Museum opens a marvelous world for you. Colored pottery depicting flowers, powerful and simple wood carvings from the Han Dynasty, exquisite Buddhist sculptures, relics left by the Great Wall and the Silk Road, all of which have vivid ethnic features, are displayed. Particularly, the colorful pottery is worth seeing as Gansu is the hometown of colorful pottery, where the oldest colored pottery in China was found. In Jan. 2006, the redecoration of the museum was ultimately finished. The new exhibition hall is about 10 000 square kilometers (about 3 861 square miles) larger than the old one. It is predicted that the new hall will open in mid-2006. With modern protective facilities, the museum provides an electronic guide. When visitors start up the machine, it presents detailed explanations of the cultural relics.

Paragraph 8

H 历史 istory

Early settlement in this region could be dated to the Han Dynasty and has a history of over 2 000 years. The city used to be called the Golden City, when it was a major stop on the ancient Silk Road. To protect the city, the Great Wall of China was extended as far as Yumen.

After the fall of the Han Dynasty, Lanzhou became the capital of a succession of tribal states. Mixed with different cultural heritages, the area at present-day Gansu province, from the 5th to the 11th century, became a center for Buddhist study.

The city acquired its current name in 1656, during Qing Dynasty.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Cultural Links
文化链接

兰州牛肉面

兰州牛肉面的最大秘密在于汤，自 20 世纪初马保子做出第一碗牛肉面至今，这汤的配方是代代相传，秘而不宣。

所谓清汤并非开水混盐，而是几十种佐料与牛肉原汤配制而成，也许您不相信，这其中唯独没有大香！正如武功，它的至高境界就是返璞归真，这“清”自然淳厚无比。可能水土也是一个方面，兰州位于黄河上游的一个河漫滩上，由于来自高原的细砂的过滤作用，是省会以上级城市中地下水质最好的，另外，兰州的食用牛肉主要是甘南和青海牦牛，所以不论怎样，外地是做不出真正地道的牛肉面的。所以现今吃牛肉面还得去兰州，也许今后有解决的办法。

牛肉面的一种特殊拉法叫做“荞麦棱棱子”，即三棱形，很别致。

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

Gansu Provincial Museum 甘肃省博物馆	Lanzhou Jiaotong University 兰州交通大学
Yellow River Iron Bridge 黄河铁桥	Gansu Agricultural University 甘肃农业大学
White Pagoda Hill 白塔山	Lanzhou Medical College 兰州医学院
The Five-Spring Mountain 五泉山	Gansu College of Traditional Chinese Medicine 甘肃中医学院
Gansu Cuisine 甘肃美食	Lanzhou Commercial College 兰州商学院
Babao Melon Carving 八宝瓜雕	Gansu Political Science and Law Institute 甘肃政法学院
Lanzhou Roasted Pork 兰州烧肉	gold city 金城
Lanzhou Beef Noodles 兰州牛肉面	
Northwest Normal University 西北师范大学	
Lanzhou University of Technology 兰州理工大学	

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

roast piglet 烤乳猪

sweet and sour Yellow river carp
糖醋黄河鲤鱼

geometrical center of China
中国的腹地

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 3 西宁 Xining

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Xining has a nickname of "World of Salt".
   西宁俗称"盐的世界"。
2. Qinghai is the birthplace of both the Dalai Lama and the Panchan Lama.
   青海是达赖喇嘛和班禅喇嘛的出生地。
3. The world famous Qinghai-Tibet Railway traverses Xining, taking on part of the transportations links between Tibet, Qinghai and Gansu Provinces.
   举世闻名青藏铁路穿越西宁。西宁成了连接西藏青海及甘肃的纽带。.
4. Dongchong Xiacao (Chinese Caterpillar Fungus) is a traditional Chinese medicine which is used as a tonic to increase the body's natural resistance to disease.
   冬虫夏草是一种传统中药,可以作为增强人体自然抵抗力的补品。
5. Snow lotus and pilose antler, both considered rare Chinese medicines, are also available in Xining.
   西宁盛产珍奇雪莲花、鹿茸、中药。
6. Yak Beef Jerky is a snack not to be missed on any trip to northwest China.
   牦牛牛肉干是西北之行不容错过的小吃。
7. The Middle Zone is the commercial center of Xining City, with most of the emporiums located here.
   中区是西宁市的商业中心,其中大部分百货公司设在这里。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

8. Every festival, tens of thousands of visitors from both home and abroad are attracted by the many varieties of beautiful tulip.
每逢佳节许多美丽的郁金香品种吸引了成千上万来自国内外的游客。
9. Every years on the 6th day of the 6th lunar month, the traditional singing festival attracts hundreds of thousands of visitors.
每年农历六月六日传统的唱歌节日吸引着成千上万的游客。
10. It has a temperature plateau climate with an annual average temperature of 5.7℃, and has 129 frost-free days.
它是温带高原气候,年均气温 5.7℃、无霜期 129 天。
11. Annual rainfall averages 345 millimeters.
全年平均降雨量 345 毫米。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

B 简介 rief Introduction

Xining is located on the eastern edge of Qinghai-Tibet Plateau and the upper reaches of Huangshui River. It is the political, economic, scientific and technological, cultural and traffic center of Qinghai Province with an average altitude of over 2 200 meters (about 7 217 feet). The activities of human beings in this region can be traced to 2 100 years ago. During the Western and Eastern Han Dynasties, owing to its developing agriculture, Xining was paid more attention due to its economic and martial significance. As well as being the important hinge between the central plains and the western part of China in ancient time, Xining was the most common passing channel of the famous Silk Road. Until now, it is still the only road by which to enter the hinterland of the Qinghai-Tibet Plateau.

Xining is also called the Summer Resort Capital of China for its cool

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

summer. The region also provides a number of attractions making a visit to the area well worth considering. The scenery of the Qinghai Lake, situated within Xining, provides an escape from fervent cities and allows you to experience beautiful natural sceneries. The lake itself is quite amazing. The Birds Island, situated on the northwest of Qinghai Lake, is waiting to present you with an extensive array of birds. To the southwest of Xining, is the birthplace of the founder of the Gelugpa Sect. The gem of the Tibetan culture—Ta'er Monastery was built here. To the north of Xining is the Beichan Temple. Climbing the temple will reward you with a view of the city from the mountaintop. A site not to be missed is the Dongguan Mosque, one of the biggest mosques in northern China.

Paragraph 2

D 区域划分 istriction

At present, five districts, three counties and a national economic and technological development zone are under the administration of the local government. With a population of more than two million, Xining is the first city on the upper reaches of the Yellow River to achieve a population into the millions. There are about 37 nationalities living here, including Han, Hui, Tu and Tibetan. The local traditions and customs are influenced by these distinctive nationalities, in particular the Tibetan group.

Paragraph 3

L 小吃 ocal Snacks

A unique feature of snacks in Xining is that they are given names after the surname of their initiator. Some of the famous ones will be introduced as following.

Liangfen (bean jelly) is made from pea powder and cut into short strips. Liangfen is served with vinegar, chili and mashed garlic, mustard and salt to enhance the taste the dish.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Niangpi is a popular snack made of flour and baking soda. It can be found anywhere in Xining for four-Yuan. The most famous version of this snack is called Mazhong Niangpi and can be found in the Mojia Jie.

Zasui Tang is a soup cooked with lamb and oxen entrails. Locals often eat this snack for breakfast. The hot soup helps warm people during the winter.

Muslim Yoghurt is a must while in Xining—this breakfast is a kind of yoghurt made by local Muslim families and is served in small bowls for one-Yuan.

Paragraph 4

花儿会
Hua'er Meeting

Hua'er, literally means flower, is a kind of folk song prevailing in Qinghai, Gansu, Ningxia and Xinjiang Provinces and sung by the Han, Hui, Dongxiang, Sala, Bao'an, Tu, Tibet and Yugu groups. Qinghai is the hometown of Hua'er. Every year, during the fifth and sixth moths of the Chinese lunar calendar, various Hua'er Meetings are held in different areas of Qinghai Province. The most influential one held in Xining is Datong County's Laoye Mountain Hua'er Meeting which is held on the sixth day of the sixth month.

Paragraph 5

中国夏都
The Summer Resort Capital of China

The ancient city of Xining, located in the watershed of Qinghai-Tibet plateau Land and Loess Plateau, stands as the hinge of Qinghai and Xizang road. The fact that no burning sun appears in the summer makes the city worth of entitling the summer resort. The rich remnant of the history in the ancient fortress city is the best living testimony to its radical changes in the past. What's more, fabulous food with plateau flavor will satisfy you not only physically but also mentally. Just come over here, the cool world is not

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

that far away from you!

Paragraph 6

地理状况 Geography

As the Summer Resort Capital of China, Xining has an average temperature of 12 ~ 19℃ even during the hottest days in July. The annual precipitation here is 371 mm, 70% ~ 80% of which is concentrated in summer, and the annual sunlight time is 2 742 hours, all of which makes a very good summer resort. With an altitude of 2 275m, the city located in the valley of Huangshui River's middle reaches. The river from west and its branches of Nanchuan River from south, and Beichuan River from north meet in the city and go eastward through the whole city. The city sits aside the four river courses just like a boat. It occupies 350 square meters with a population of 2.05 million, including 1 million of the urban population. The minorities here are mostly Hui, Tibetan, Sala, and Mongol, besides other minorities of Manchu, Dongxiang, and Zhuang etc. Xining's Dongguan Mosque is one of the four major mosques of northwest China, and Kumbum Monastery is the holy land of Gelug School of Tibetan Buddhism. Those temples on the north and the south reflect each other; the relics of ancient South Liang Regime survived long history and are still majestic.

Paragraph 7

西宁白羊毛 White Xining Wool

The "white Xining wool", which is used to make Tibetan Carpets, is the best raw material worldly recognized for carpet spinning. (This wool is a unique raw material produced in Qinghai, especially in Xining.) The carpets made by "white Xining wool" feature the tenacity, softness, and brightness. Being one of the five special national regions, Qinghai is the key producing area of "white Xining wool". Tibetan Carpets, having the long history and unique regional ethnic characteristics, are the main prod-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

ucts of wool-and-cashmere-processing industry that be one of the four superior industries in Qinghai province. Qinghai Tibetan Carpets not only reserve the traditional carpets' characteristics of primitive simplicity, naturalness, and roughness, but also absorb the culture of western countries. Compounded with the traditional pictures of rich Tibetan Buddhism meanings, the Tibetan carpets gradually become famous in international Tibetan carpets markets, and win an increasing market share and expanding influence power.

Paragraph 8

Xining Shopping 西宁购物区

Shopping in Xining will add a unique experience to your trip. Although Qinghai Province is located in the far northwest of China, the shopping malls, wholesale markets and retail shops in Xining offer both ordinary goods and unique local specialties of Qinghai and the Qinghai-Tibet Plateau. Xining is the supply depot for visitors who are headed to the other destinations of Qinghai Province and Tibet, making it a great place to shop whether you plan to spend your time Xining or venture on to more remote areas.

The Qinghai-Tibet Plateau is home to a number of unique medical treatments. Dongchong Xiacao (Chinese Caterpillar Fungus) is a traditional Chinese medicine which is used as a tonic to increase the body's natural resistance to disease. It has been exported to other countries for a long time. In Xining, you can purchase a bottle of medicated wine, including the Chinese caterpillar fungus and other rare medicinal materials. Snow lotus and pilose antler, both considered rare Chinese medicines, are also available in Xining.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Cultural Links
文化链接

西宁名称的由来

西宁有着悠久的历史，是我国黄河流域文化组成部分。据城北区朱家寨遗址和西杏园遗址等考古发现，早在四、五千年以前就有人类在这块土地上生产、生活，繁衍生息。公元前121—111年间，西汉在今西宁设立了西平亭，标志着西宁正式纳入了西汉的版图。两汉以来，地处湟水谷地的西宁等地生产得到了发展，人口也不断增加，西宁及其周边地区在政治、经济、交通和军事上的地位越来越重要。公元220年东汉灭亡，魏、蜀、吴三国鼎立，今西宁属曹魏的统治范围。222年，魏在今西宁市修筑了西平郡城。公元265年，西晋在今湟水流域仍置西平郡，辖西都（今西宁市）等地。

十六国时期，鲜卑族秃发部据今甘肃西部、青海东部地区建立地方割据政权南凉，曾一度建都西平（今西宁）。公元445年，北魏灭鄯国，改西平郡为鄯善镇（今西宁）。公元526年（北魏孝昌二年），又改鄯善镇为鄯州，辖西平（今西宁市）等地。公元607年（隋炀帝大业三年）又改鄯州为西平郡，辖湟水、化隆二县，今西宁为西平郡湟水县的辖地。公元618年唐朝建立后，在青海东部设鄯、廓二州。鄯州辖龙支、湟水二县，今西宁为湟水县辖地。公元1104年北宋改鄯州为西宁州，隶属于陇西都护府，从此，“西宁”这一名称一直沿用到今天。

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

plateau climate 高原气候	Dongguan Great Mosque 东关清真大寺
Hua'er Meeting 花儿会	
Qinghai Tulip Festival 中国青海郁金香节	Ta'er Lamasery 塔尔寺
	Qinghai Hotel 青海宾馆
The summer Resort Capital of China 夏都西宁	Jian Yin Hotel 建银宾馆
	Xining Hotel 西宁宾馆

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

World of Salt 盐的世界	Chinese Caterpillar Fungus
Dalai Lama 达赖喇嘛	冬虫夏草
Panchan Lama 班禅喇嘛	Traditional Chines medicine
Qinghai-Tibet Railway 青藏铁路	传统中药

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 4 银川 Yinchuan

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Yinchuan is the capital of the Ningxia Hui Autonomous Region.
   银川是宁夏回族自治区首府。
2. You can be adventurous for Ningxia's mysteries.
   你可探访宁夏的神秘。
3. Ningxia Hui Autonomous Region was founded in 1958.
   宁夏回族自治区成立于 1958 年。
4. Ningxia produces coal, petroleum, mica, asbestos, lime and Chinese wolfberry.
   宁夏出产煤、石油、云母、石棉、石灰和枸杞子。
5. Ningxia was home to the Rong and Di tribes in the Western Zhou dynasty.
   宁夏是西周时戎族和狄族的故乡。
6. Yinchuan is in the middle of a mesh of irrigation canals in the plains.
   银川市位于平原浇灌区的中央。
7. Yinchuan is close to mountains and sandy deserts.
   银川市紧邻群山和沙漠。
8. Yinchuan was founded in Tang Dynasty.
   银川始建于唐代。
9. Yinchuan is the capital of Ningxia and was once also the capital of the Western Xia dynasty(1038—1227).
   银川市是宁夏首府，曾是西夏(1038 至 1227 年)首都。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

10. Yinchuan is located in the dry temperate zone, with a typical continental temperate climate characterized its long cold winter, short hot summer, low annual precipitation and plenty of sunshine.
银川地处温带干旱、典型的温带大陆性气候区，特点是冬季漫长寒冷、夏季短暂炎热，年降水量少、阳光充沛。
11. The average temperature all the year is between 8.3 and 8.6 centigrade with a precipitation varying from 193 to 203 milimeters.
全年平均温度介于8.3到8.6℃，降水量为193—203mm。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

B 简介 Brief Introduction

Yinchuan, the capital of Ningxia Hui Autonomous Region, lies to the west of the Yellow River and to the east of Helan Mountain. The landform is divided into two main parts, the mountainous region in the west and south and the plains in the north and east. The average altitude of Yinchuan is 1 100 meters (about 3 609 feet). Lying in the central section of Ningxia Plain which is irrigated by the Yellow River, Yinchuan holds abundant water resources and enjoys the reputation of 'a land of fish and rice in the frontier'.

The city that has a history of more than 1 300 years was originally founded in 678. It was called Western Xia from the establishment in 1038 by the leader of Dangxiang ethnic group and had created splendid culture as well as gorgeous architecture.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 2

C民族和文化 Culture and Ethnic

Yinchuan is a multi-nationality city including Han, Hui, Manchu, Mongolian, and Korean peoples. Among them, the Hui people account for 26.3 percent of the total population and they have maintained the traditional folk customs and life style that are unique to other ethnic group.

A brilliant culture has contributed to Yinchuan being a famous tourist city. There are over 60 historical sites including mosques, pagodas, pavilions, temples, and imperial tombs as well as natural scenery such as Helan Mountain, Sand Lake Scenic Resort (Sha Hu) and Shapotou, etc.

Paragraph 3

T交通 Transportation

A transportation system of highway, railway and airlines in Yinchuan provides speed and convenience. There are several national highways leading to all parts of the country and more than 125 kilometers (about 78 miles) of expressways within the boundaries of the city. Baolan Railway (Baotou in Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region to Lanzhou in Gansu Province) and Zhongbao Railway (Zhongwei in Ningxia Hui Autonomous Region to Baoji in Shaanxi Province) connect with all railway lines to every destination. In addition, flights from Yinchuan Hedong Airport take you to all the major cities of China.

Paragraph 4

Y饮食 Yinchuan Dining

Yinchuan, as a main cultural center for the Hui people in China, offers a variety of unique Muslim food as well as traditional Chinese fare. Visitors can not only sample authentic Islamic dishes but also taste some of the u-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

nique Hui cuisine.

The dishes most representative of Yinchuan are Qingzheng Yanggaorou (steamed lamb), Shouzhua Yangrou (mutton eaten with hands), Yangrou Paomo (shredded cake in mutton and beef soup), and Xiangsuji (spiced crisp chicken).

The traditional Gaiwancha (a kind of tea beverage), which is said to have originated during the Tang Dynasty (618—907), is also of Hui origin. This tea comes in a variety of flavors due to the different ingredients added such as brown sugar, white sugar, crystal sugar, five-savory (tea leaf, crystal sugar, longan, raisin, and dried apricot), and eight-treasure (Chinese date, Barbary wolfberry fruit, walnut kernel, longan, gingili, raisin, white sugar and tea leaf).

Paragraph 5

Yinchuan Nightlife 夜生活

Hui people are good at singing and dancing. You can enjoy folk songs of strong northwest flavor called Hua'er. You can listen to melodious music played on a special instrument called a Kouxian in the local showplaces or recreation rooms. Additionally, you can attend wonderful performances every month on the 1st and 15th days of the lunar calendar at Haibao Pagoda.

When the lights are lit each evening, you can wander along Xinhua Jie, Jiefang Jie, and South Gate Square or have a taste of snacks at the night market in Zhongshan Beijie.

In addition, dance halls, bowling alleys, swimming pools, gymnasiums as well as cafes, pubs, teashops, and various other entertainment centers can offer you an escape from the pressures of city life.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 6

Climate 气候

Yinchuan is located in the dry temperate zone, with a typical continental temperate climate characterized by its long cold winter, short hot summer, low annual precipitation and plenty of sunshine. The average temperature all the year is between 8.3 and 8.6 centigrade with a precipitation varying from 193 to 203 milimeters.

Paragraph 7

Natural Resources 自然资源

More than 20 minerals have been discovered in the area of Yinchuan, including coal, limestone, sandstone, diabase, and Helan jade. The region is also rich in geothermal energy resources.

Paragraph 8

Human Resources 人力资源

Yinchuan boasts an abundance of human resources. It has 169 scientific research institutions and over 76 000 professionals and technicians.

Paragraph 9

Industrial Structure 产业结构

It consists of two parts. Part 1 occupies an area of 2.26 square kilometers and has primarily established its superiority in industries such as special medicine manufacturing, mechanical and electronic integration and information industry. Part 2 covers 5.24 square kilometers and is to be further divided into four industrial parks, the central part of which is respectively for comprehensive objectives of finance, commerce, agency service and enter-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

tainment.

Paragraph 10

投资亮点
Investment Priorities

It is the unique state-level economic and technological development zone in Ningxia Hui Autonomous Region. It is designed to develop the hi-tech industry and to upgrade traditional industries through the former. It is also aimed at encouraging the development of information industry based on information technology, special pharmaceutical industry based on bioengineering technology, petrochemical industry based on advanced chemical technology, old-economy industries revamped through new technologies, modern banking services that offer various financial products and derivatives, and agency services.

Paragraph 11

银川购物区
Yinchuan Shopping

Here one can not only buy unique local products or souvenirs but also enjoy shopping in such an interesting place. Yinchuan will provide you with many special agricultural products and tourist craftworks.

Yinchuan is not a big city, yet there are some products here that are of local flavor. The famous "Five Treasures": liquorice, Helan stone, sheepskin, Barbary wolfberry fruit and facail may be good choices for you. In addition, sunflowers, Chinese dates, tremellas, and folk porcelain can be bought at vendor's stands along the street. You can haggle over the price with sellers in such places.

Xinhua Department Store located in Xinhua Dongjie is the biggest shopping center in Yinchuan which provides you a variety of commodities and you can buy local products such as flannelette blankets and Helan stone carvings here.

If you want to buy some cultural souvenirs or craftwork, the Cultural

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Relic Main Store of Ningxia will fulfil your wishes. It has cultural relics dating from the Neolithic Age to the Yuan (1271—1368), Ming (1368—1644) and Qing (1644—1911) dynasties. Articles of bronze and Western Xia culture as well as replicas of cliff paintings of Helan Mountain are much sought after by collectors.



银川民俗文化

回族是宁夏的主要民族，他们信仰伊斯兰教，宗教礼仪十分严格。伊斯兰教徒必须奉行“五功”：念（念诵“清真言”，即“万物非主，唯有真主，穆罕默德，真主使者。”）、礼（每天面向麦加的克尔白作五次礼拜，每礼拜五到清真寺参加聚礼）、斋（一年封一个月斋）、课（按照财产比例交纳天课——宗教税）、朝（有条件的穆斯林，一生中至少去麦加朝觐一次）。除这“五功”外，每年还有庆祝活动和节日要参加。著名的圣纪节、开斋节、宰牲节，是伊斯兰教三大传统节日。清真寺是回族进行礼拜、诵经、沐浴等宗教活动的场所，也是进行其他重大活动的场所。



Ningxia University 宁夏大学	Yinchuan Rainbow Bridge Hotel 银川虹桥大酒店
Second Northwest Nationalities University 西北第二民族大学	Kaida Hotel Inchuan 凯达大酒店
Ningxia Medical Institute 宁夏医学院	Rainbow Bridge 虹桥大酒店
The Nanguan Mosque 南关清真寺	Era Mansion 宁夏世纪大厦
Haibao Pagoda 海宝塔	Hai Yun Restaurant 中餐厅
The Western Xia Mausoleum 西夏王陵	Grill Room 西餐厅
	People's Hospital of Ningxia 宁夏人民医院

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Second People's Hospital of Yinchuan 银川第二人民医院
Ningxia Hui Autonomous Region 宁夏回族自治区
petroleum 石油
mica 云母
asbestos 石棉
lime 石灰
Chinese medlar 枸杞子
a mesh of irrigation canals 平原浇灌区
Western Xia dynasty 西夏朝
long cold winter 冬季漫长寒冷
short hot summer 夏季短暂炎热

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 5 西安 Xi'an

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Xi'an called Chang'an in ancient times is one of the most famous ancient capitals in China.
   西安古称长安,是中国最著名的古都之一。
2. All together 11 dynasties had their capitals in Xi'an, which lasted for more than 1 100 years.
   一共有 11 个王朝在西安建都,建都时间长达 1100 多年。
3. Xi'an was the starting point of the well-known "Silk Road".
   西安是中外闻名的"丝绸之路"的起点。
4. Chang'an meant everlasting peace and reached its peak in the Tang Dynasty.
   长安意为唐代达到鼎盛时期的永久平安。
5. Xi'an was spruced up for President Clinton's visit in 1998.
   西安市 1998 年曾装扮一新,迎接克林顿总统的到访。
6. The terracotta army is a puzzle because the first emperor left no record of its existence.
   兵马俑军阵如今仍是个谜,因为秦始皇没有留下任何记载。
7. To and from the Terracotta Warriors, we pass the Tomb of Emperor Qinshihuang.
   在去看兵马俑及回来的路上,我们都要经过秦始皇陵墓。
8. Terracotta Warriors have been made one of the 20th century's greatest archaeological discoveries.
   兵马俑被誉为 20 世纪最伟大的考古发掘之一。
9. Emperor Qinshihuang is the first emperor of the Qin Dynasty, the builder of the Great Wall, and the first unifier of China.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

秦始皇是秦朝的第一个皇帝,他修建了长城,第一次统一了中国。

10. Numerous cultural antiquities and natural surroundings give people a panoramic view of the ancient city, Xi'an.
众多的文化遗址和自然环境可以让人们全景式地认识西安这座古城。

11. Xi'an is located in the central area of the Northwest of China, which is now the capital of Shaanxi Province of China.
西安位于中国西北地区中部,陕西省省会。

12. Xi'an is one of the most ancient capitals in the world.
西安是世界上最古老的首都。

13. Xi'an is also the starting point of the famous Silk Road to the West.
西安也是著名的去往西方的丝绸之路的起点。

14. Inside the ancient city, there are mainly four attractions.
古城内,主要有四个景点。

15. There are many Buddhist and Taoism temples around Xi'an.
西安周围有许多佛教、道教庙宇。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

B 西安简介 Brief Introduction

Around 1 500 years ago, the historic city of Xi'an was one of the greatest and richest cities in the world. As the starting point for the Silk Road stretching across Asia to Europe, the city was China's first international commercial center. At a time when Beijing was only a remote trading outpost and Shanghai barely even a fishing village, Xi'an was the first city in the world to have a population of more than one million.

Jump forward a couple of millennia and Xi'an is again positioning itself as a commercial gateway—a strategic entry point to China's underdevel-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

oped west and a key staging post on the "Neo-Eurasia Continental Bridge", effectively a revived version of the old Silk Road.

Located near the geographic center of modern-day China and renowned internationally as the home of the ancient Terracotta Warriors, Xi'an is rebuilding itself as a major engineering center, specializing in aerospace manufacturing, as well as automobiles, textiles and optics.

One of the oldest and most successful foreign investment projects is the Xi'an Janssen pharmaceutical plant, a subsidiary of the US giant Johnson & Johnson. The US $ 190 million plant has become the largest pharmaceutical joint venture in China.

Another growing area of foreign interest is in Xi'an's status as the center of China's aviation industry. The world's two aviation giants, Boeing and Airbus, both have tie ups with local manufacturers amid expectations that Xi'an will emerge as a major manufacturing center in the world's fastest-growing aviation market.

Xi'an is most famous around the world for the Terracotta Army. Designed as a permanent guard for the tomb of the first emperor of China, Qin Shihuang, the warriors were only discovered 30 years ago by a team of peasants digging a well.

With its rich cultural and archaeological heritage Xi'an has long been one of China's top tourist destinations, a status that has in turn made it one of the best connected second-tier cities in China. The city's new airport, which opened in October 2003, has flights to almost all of China's major cities as well as several international destinations in Korea, Japan and Southeast Asia.

Meanwhile Xi'an is also at the focus of a rapidly improving expanding highway and rail network with plans to spend more than $ 15 billion on expressway construction over the next 10 years, reinforcing the city's position as a road transport hub for western China.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 2

History 历史

Zhou Dynasty established its capital in Fēng（沣/灃）and Hào（镐/鎬）between the late 11th century BC and 770 BC, both located west of contemporary Xi'an.

Qin Dynasty（221-206 BCE）constructed its capital in Xianyang（咸阳）, on the north shore of Wei River. It was burned by Xiang Yu at the end of the dynasty.

652: Construction of Da Yan Pagoda（大雁塔, Great Wild Goose Pagoda）began. It measured 64 m in height. This pagoda was constructed for the storage of the translations of Buddhist sutras obtained from India by the monk Xuan Zang.

707: Construction of Xiao Yan Pagoda（小雁塔, Small Wild Goose Pagoda）began. It measured 45 m in height. After the earthquake of 1556, its height was reduced to 43.4 m.

904: The end of Tang Dynasty brought destruction to Chang'an. Residences were forced to move to Luoyang, the new capital. Only a small area continued to be occupied after the destruction.

1370: Ming Dynasty built a new wall to protect a much smaller city of 12 km. The wall measures 11.9 km in circumference, 12 m in height, and 15-18 m in thickness at the base.

This city was the site of the Xi'an Incident in 1936 during World War II. The Xi'an Incident brought the Communist Party of China and Kuomintang to a truce so the two forces could concentrate on fighting against Japan.

Paragraph 3

Geography 地理

The city is nested between a flood plain created by 8 surrounding rivers and streams, most of which have been too polluted to be used as sources

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

of fresh water. Xi'an borders the northern foot of the Qinling Mountain Ranges to the south, and the banks of Wei River to the north. One of the four sacred Taoist mountains, Mount Hua, is located at the east of the city. The city covers approximately 16 808 km^2 of urban area.

Paragraph 4

D 人口统计 emographics

Its population is around 7.5 million. About 4 million people live in the city area. Xi'an has a large Muslim quarter which is the home to the beautiful 1 360 years old Great Mosque of Xi'an. It is also one of the most heavily trafficked tourist cities within the People's Republic, a destination for tens of thousands of foreign and Chinese tourists alike every year.

Paragraph 5

C 文化 ulture

Historically, Xi'an has been one of the most important cities in the world. The culture of Xi'an is inherited from the traditions of one of the world's earliest civilizations. The Guanzhong Ren (关中人/關中人) were the cultural antecedent of Xi'anese, their cultural features are drawn from the Ten Specialities of Guanzhong Ren (关中十大怪/關中十大怪). Another major part of this culture is Eight Great Sights of Chang'an (长安八景/長安八景), storied scenic areas in the region.

The drama of the original Xi'anese, Qinqiang (秦腔, Voice of Qin) is the oldest and most extensive Chinese Opera of the four major types of Chinese opera. The dialect of Xi'an is Shaanxi Hua, which is being assimilated by Standard Mandarin, but still retains much grammar and pronunciation from the Classical Chinese. Because of its long development as a culture, the cuisine of Xi'an is extensive as well. It is the representative of food of Northwestern China. The most well known local food is the Xi'anese snack, a traditional food of the Hui people. Hui-style snacks feature beef and mut-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

ton because the Hui people do not eat pork. Baked beef and mutton, buns with beef, mutton pancake and mutton soup are some of the tasty Hui dishes one can enjoy in Xi'an.

Paragraph 6

Sights 景观

The city is surrounded by a well-preserved defensive wall which was re-constructed in the Ming Dynasty. The area in which Xi'an sits is a relatively flat place, making travel on the wall relatively easy unlike the steep inclines of the Great Wall. It is also plenty wide enough to rent a bicycle and cruise along the wall without ruffling anyone's feathers.

The Mausoleum of Qin Shi Huang（秦始皇）and his Terracotta Army are located 40 km to the east of the city's suburbs.

The city's Muslim quarter is home to the Great Mosque of Xi'an.

The Big Wild Goose Pagoda and Small Wild Goose Pagoda are both spectacular towers and both are well over 1 000 years old and have mostly survived great earthquakes. The former is next to a large square with many fountains that rise and fall in time to music during one of the daily performances.

The Bell Tower and Drum Tower, located at the city centre.

The Stele Forest is famous for its numerous historic inscriptions and stoneworks. The Shaanxi History Museum has a large collection of artifacts both modern and ancient. The Banpo Neolithic village is located outside the city.

Paragraph 7

Economy 经济

Xi'an's GDP was RMB 127 billion and GDP per capita was RMB 16 180 (US $ 2 025) in 2005, ranked No. 39 among 659 Chinese cities. Xi'an is the most industrialized and developed city in northwestern China. Xi'an has

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

also consistently received one of the largest FDI (Foreign Direct Investment) amounts among cities in western China.

Paragraph 8

交通 Transportation

Rail

Xi'an has one major railway station: Xi'an Railway Station. Other railway station is Xi'an West Railway Station, Xi'an East Railway Station, Sanmincun Railway Station, Fangzhicheng Railway Station, Xi'an North Railway Station (Chang'an Railway Station) and Xi'an North Railway Station (under construction).

Xi'an is a railway hub. There are railway lines from Xi'an to Nanjing, Baotou, Ankang, Yan'an.

Airport

Xi'an Xianyang International Airport, located in the northwest of Xi'an near Xiangyang, is Xi'an's main airport. It is the biggest airport in Northwest China. Chang'an Airlines is the main airline based in Xi'an.

Public Bus

There are more than 200 bus routes in Xi'an.

Subway

A subway construction project, designed 7 lines, is planned to be completed by 2009.

Paragraph 9

西安的今天 Xi'an Today

Xi'an has a thriving tourist business, hosts archaeologists from every corner of the globe, and it also is building a diversified economy. There are several major universities in Xi'an as well as art and trade schools. These schools provide the educational base on which the economy is being built.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Cultural Links
文化链接

西安钟楼的传说

传说从前关中八百里秦川是一望无边的泽国，西安就湮没在这大海之中，海水不是河流汇聚而成的，是从现在钟楼位置的泉眼里涌出的。

海里有只数丈长的巨型乌龟整天在闹腾，只要它一动就会有翻江蹈海的巨浪。半坡先民依山傍水而居，他们的居处屡遭水淹。为了保一方平安，也为了自己的居所不再有水患，先民们就请来神仙工匠，修建了座钟楼盖住了涌海水的泉眼，为了不让这乌龟兴风作浪，专门求神仙用锁心链把它锁住，使它在泉眼里长眠不醒，将它的巨大身躯当做堵水栓，使海水不会冲出，关中这海底平原才得以渐渐露出容颜。

如果谁不相信的话，每到夜深人静的时候，你可以爬到钟楼附近的地上或钟楼的墙边仔细去听，准能听到有海水汩汩的涌动声，还有长眠乌龟的鼾声，多少年过去了现在还能很清晰地听到。那个泉眼的地下水道一直通到渤海湾，原来是大海的水形成的关中泽国，那巨型乌龟也是从海里通过水道爬到关中来的。

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

Chang'an University 长安大学	Shaanxi University of Technology 陕西科技大学
Northwest A&F University 西北农林科技大学	The Fourth Military Medical University 第四军医大学
Northwest University 西北大学	Xi'an International Studies University 西安外国语大学
Northwest University of Political Science and Law 西北政法大学	Xi'an Jiaotong University 西安交通大学
Northwestern Polytechnical University 西北工业大学	Xi'an Polytechnic University 西安工程大学
Shaanxi Normal University 陕西师范大学	

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Xi'an Shiyou University
西安石油大学
Xi'an Technological University
西安工业大学
Xi'an University of Architecture and Technology 西安建筑科技大学
Xi'an University of Post & Telecommunications 西安邮电学院
Xi'an University of Science and Technology 西安科技大学
Xi'an University of Technology
西安理工大学
Xidian University
西安电子科技大学
Shaanxi Institute of Education
陕西教育学院
Xi'an Academy of Fine Arts
西安美术学院
Xi'an Conservatory of Music
西安音乐学院
Xi'an Institute of Finance and Economics 西安财经学院
Xi'an Physical Culture Institute
西安体育学院
Xi'an Eurasia University
西安欧亚学院
Xi'an Fanyi University
西安翻译学院
Xi'an Peihua University
西安培华学院
Xi'an Siyuan University
西安思源学院
The City Wall of the Ming Dynasty
明代西安长城
The Xi'an Forest of Stelae Museum
西安碑林博物馆
Big Wild Goose Pagoda 大雁塔
The Great Mosque 清真寺
The Small Wild Goose Pagoda
小雁塔
The Bell Tower 钟楼
Banpo Museum 半坡遗址
The Mausoleum of Emperor Qin Shihuang 秦始皇陵
Huaqing Hot Spring 华清池
Imperial palace—E'pang Palace
阿房宫

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

5 西南地区
Southwest China

Unit 1 拉萨 Lhasa

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Lhasa, the capital of Tibet, is the main point of entry to the roof of the world.
   拉萨,西藏的首府,是走进"世界屋脊"的主要通道。
2. Lhasa's population is about 373 000, Tibet's population 2. 80 million.
   拉萨市的人口约有 37.3 万,整个西藏的人口有 280 万。
3. The busiest tourist months of Tibet are April, May, and July through October.
   西藏的旅游旺季是 4 ~ 5 月和 7 ~ 10 月。
4. The Tibetan people are brave, strong and forthright, very kind and hospitable.
   藏族人民勇敢、刚毅、豪爽,又十分善良好客。
5. The Tibetan people like silver. They regard silver as the symbol of purity, luckiness and nobility.
   藏族人民喜爱银器,他们视白银为圣洁、吉祥、高尚的象征。
6. Tashi delek is the Tibetan greeting. It means "good luck".
   扎西德勒是藏族的问候语,它的意思是"吉祥如意"。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

7. Buttered tea is a unique drink in Tibetan regions; it's also the main drink for the guests.
酥油茶是藏区独具风味的饮料，同时也是藏家人待客的必备饮料。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

B 简介 rief Introduction

Lhasa, meaning the "sacred place of Buddhas" in the Tibetan language, is an ancient city on the plateau with a history of over 1 300 years. It is at an elevation of over 3 600 meters—one of the highest cities in the world.

Lhasa is divided into two sections—a modern Chinese area and a traditional Tibetan area. The most famous symbol of the city is the Potala Palace, the former seat of the Dalai Lama, built in the 17th century. The Jokhang temple in the center of town dates back 1 300 years, It contains some of the greatest treasures of Tibetan culture, including a pure gold statue of Sakyamuni. The Barkhor is the name given to the pilgrim circuit that runs clockwise around the temple. A host of market and tea stalls has grown up to serve the streams of pilgrims and tourists. The Norbu Linka, once the summer residence of the Dalai Lama, is 3km west of the Potala-Palace. The park here contains several small palaces and a zoo.

Tibetan boots, rugs, saddle blankets, jewellery, temple bells and prayer wheels are all sold in Lhasa, and you can watch carpets being woven at the Khawachen Carpet Factory on Jinzhu Xilu. Local beerhalls put on shows of traditional Tibetan music and dancing, known as longma, or "royal music".

Snowlands restaurant next to the Snowlands Hotel serves Nepalese and Tibetan food in a comfortable atmosphere, while Tashi's (Tibetan for

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

"auspicious") on the same street is noted for its bobis (chapatti-like breads eaten with fried vegetables, cream cheese or meat). Tashi's is located inside the Kirey Hotel. The Mad Yak on Beijing Zhong Lu serves traditional cuisine and offers nightly Tibetan song and dance shows. The Kailash restaurant in the Banak Shol Hotel is also recommended.

The 468-room Lhasa Hotel on Minzu, a former Holiday Inn, has one of the few swimming pools in Tibet. Everest, located within the Lhasa, offers a daily Western buffet. The Tibet Hotel features a Western restaurant in its VIP building. The Dunya restaurant on Beijing Dong Lu near the Potala Palace has a European chef and serves Tibetan and international dishes. One Blue Bar is located at the Yak Hotel, while another favourite nightspot is sunland Disco next to the Chichu Hotel.

Accommodation is expensive in Tibet, even though standards tend to be low. The Tibet Hotel and Lhasa Hotel are probably the most comfortable places to stay, but don't expect luxury.

Paragraph 2

The 神圣之都 The Sacred City of Lhasa

Lhasa, with a history of 1 300 years, means "Holy Land" or "Land of Buddhism" in the Tibetan language. It sits 3 650 meters above sea level on the northern bank of the Lhasa River, a tributary of the Yarlung Zangbo. Since ancient times, Lhasa has been the political, economic, cultural and religious center of Tibet, and the majestic Potala Palace stands as its symbol.

When Tang Dynasty Princess Wencheng married into the Tubo Kingdom in the 7th century, Lhasa was a wasteland. Later the monasteries of Jokhang and Ramoche were built there. As religious missionaries and pilgrims flocked to the temples, inns and residences were built around the Jokhang Monastery, forming the first bones of Lhasa City.

Today Lhasa has 264 temples, including 40 in the city proper that are listed as key cultural relics under regional or national protection. The ancient

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Tibetan architecture that spreads out for a square kilometer around the Potala Palace and the Jokhang Monastery reflects the unique culture, wisdom and life of Tibetan people. UNESCO has added this architecture to its World Cultural Heritage list. Lhasa was also among the first group of 24 famous historical and cultural cities designated by the State Council in 1982.

Lhasa was formalty established as a city in 1960. Its current jurisdiction covers 30 000 square kilometers, including one district (Chengguan), seven counties (Damxung, Doilungdequen, Quxu, Maizhokunggar, Dagze, Nyemo and Lhunzhub), and one nationallevel economic and technological development zone. Its population of 560 000 is made up of 31 ethnic groups, including the Tibetan, Han and Hui. Tibetans and people of other ethnic minorities account for more than 90 percent of Lhasa's population. Lhasa is one of the highest-altitude cities in the world and is the city with the least pollution and the best environment in China.

Paragraph 3

L运动中的拉萨
hasa on the Move

A historic moment occurred at 20:58 on July 3, 2006, Train T27 completed its 48-hour maiden journey from Beijing to Lhasa via Beijing-Lanzhou-Liayungang, Lanzhou-Qinghai, and Qinghai-Tibet railways. Chinese engineers had spent more than three decades planning, designing and constructing the 100-year-old brainchild of Dr. Sun Yat-sen—the Qinghai-Tibet Railway. since that momentous minute, the railway has increased the flow of people, materials and information into the plateau, giving the ancient, mystic land of Tibet a seat on the high-speed train to development.

Paragraph 4

F五步走战略
ive"Leapfrogging Phases"

When Lhasa was liberated in 1951, it was only three square kilometers in size. At least half of its 220 000 square meters of residential buildings

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

were dilapidated, and the city had neither sewage systems nor decent roads. Lhasa Mayor Norbu Dunzhub, a Tibetan in his 40s, is proud of the changes he has witnessed over the past few decades. He recalls that municipal construction began in the 1960s, and went through five "leapfrogging phases". The first started in 1964, when five roads and a two-kilometer-long sewage system were built around the Potala Palace. The second occurred in the 1970s, when the Lhasa General Municipal Plans were drawn up and implemented. The third followed the central government's Second Forum on the Work in Tibet, which approved 43 aid-Tibet projects, including 18 for Lhasa. The funds were used to give Lhasa a badly needed face-lift—modern Tibetan style buildings were erected all over the city. The fourth occurred between 1987 and 1991. Large-scale renovations of the old downtown area and expansion and construction of 11 roads and auxiliary projects were completed. The fifth and current phase kicked off in 1994 with the commencement of another 62 aid-Tibet projects. The central government approved these projects with the aim of upgrading Tibet's infrastructure and urban public utilities. All of the "leapfrogging phases" have been crucial to Lhasa's transformation from a run-down slum to a modern, convenient, Tibetan-style city.

Though Norbu Dunzhub is grateful to Beijing and other Chinese cities for their generous support via these aid projects, he looks forward to the day when the city can stand on its own two feet. That day, he reckons, is not far off. "Lhasa is putting an end to its history of relying almost entirely on the central treasury," he says. In 2005 Lhasa brought in local revenues of RMB 320 million (US $40 million), or a quarter of the municipal expenditure that year. "With Lhasa's unfavorable conditions, we could never have gotten so far without support from the central government. That said, we didn't want to totally rely on that. Now that the railway is operating, Lhasa will be able to accomplish great things, and it will continue to reduce the financial burden on the central government," says the mayor.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 5

农牧民住房
Housing for Farmers and Herders

The Yarlung Zangbo and Lhasa rivers stretch along the 70-kilometer-long bus ride from Lhasa Airport to the city proper. Beyond their banks are magnificent, dark-brown mountains, at the foot of which are many newly-built Tibetanstyle courtyard houses. Colorful prayer banners or five-star red flags flutter in the breeze on their roofs. Over the past two years, the municipal government has built all these new houses for local farmers and herders.

Mayor Norbu says there's a vast highland pasture within the jurisdiction of Lhasa where farmers and herders live in sparsely spread settlements. Some even lead a traditional, nomadic way of life. Lhasa, as the pilot of the "safe housing for farmers and herders" project that was launched across the autonomous region this year, started to build houses for them in 2005. This year will see the construction of houses for 9 000 families, and the relocation and renovation of 100 old settlements.

Construction is partially funded by farmers and herders that request new housing, and is assisted by subsidies from the regional, municipal and county finances and bank loans. For instance, every family that applies for new housing in Naiqung Township, Doilungdeqen County, will get a subsidy of RMB 10 000 from the regional government, RMB 5 000 from the municipal government, and RMB 10 000 from the county government. Today, many farmers and herders that once lived in crowded mud huts have moved into their newly-built two-story stone houses. Mayor Norbu says, "If we can provide farmers and herders with safe and cozy homes, cleandrinking water, smooth, wide roads, electricity and other modern conveniences, they'll have the happiest existence they've ever known." At the Lhasa safe housing construction conference held in June 2006, it was announced that so far some 3 690 homes had been constructed. And by the end of the year, the city will have made available RMB 140 million to assist housing

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

construction for another 10 000 families.

Paragraph 6

保持拉萨特色
Maintaining Lhasa's Characteristics

Lhasa offers the visitor a completely unique experience. It is unlike other parts of China, or indeed, other parts of Tibet. But like other tourist cities, it has a wealth of historical and cultural sites and shops, and a new urban center that lights up at night for action seekers. Some worry that the operation of the Qinghai-Tibet Railway, and consequently, unprecedented development, will deprive Lhasa of many of its unique characteristics.

Mayor Norbu does not agree. He recently told the Southern Weekend newspaper, "Tibetan culture will be neither extinguished nor changed as a result of the railway, and Lhasa will not lose its urban characteristics because of the railway." He reasons that the market economy "is biased towards anything that's unique," just like Tibetan culture, which has attracted and fascinated countless tourists from home and broad. Rather than fade away, he reckons that Tibetan culture will grow even stronger.

Gonpo Zhaxi, secretary of the CPC Lhasa Municipal Committee, agrees with Norbu Dunzhub. "Development is the key to every solution, and protection is its prerequisite. We strive to achieve protection in the course of development, rather than sacrificing development for the sake of protection. The task at hand is coordinating development and protection in upgrading Lhasa while maintaining its Tibetan characteristics."

The latest statistics show that in the first half of 2006, Lhasa received 350 000 Chinese and foreign tourists, an increase of 103 percent over the same period of 2005. They brought with them tourism revenue of RMB 500 million (US $62.5 million), an increase of 79.3 percent over the same period last year. However, municipal administrators are keeping their calm amid the boom. "There will be nothing like a "transformation to the bone" in the renovation project of the old downtown area, nor will there be construction damages to this historic and cultural city in the course of municipal

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

development," vows Mayor Norbu Dunzhub.

The recently announced municipal construction plan under the 11th Five Year Plan restricts the height, size and color of new buildings in the old city area so as to protect the ancient and traditional facade of this old part of Lhasa and stipulates that the municipal layout, cityscape and architectural style must highlight Tibetan characteristics.

Paragraph 7

新高度起飞
Taking off from a New Height

Norbu Dunzhub started his official career in 1978, when he worked for the public security department of Shannan Prefecture. He then became secretary of the Political and Judicial Commission of the CPC Shannan Prefectural Committee and later of the Political and Judicial Commission of the CPC Lhasa Municipal Committee. He was then made mayor of Lhasa. His past experience of working in Tibet has taught him the important relationship between stability and development: "If stability is maintained, development will have its foundation, and the key to stability is development."

Lhasa has set the following goals for the 11th Five-Year Plan period: promoting characteristic industries, increasing both urban and rural residents' incomes, constructing local central cities and a harmonious society, consolidating ecological and environmental protection and construction, and expanding reform and opening-up. It will also speed up the transformation of its mode of economic growth, move ever closer to a market economy and an information society, accelerate the processes of industrialization and urbanization, boost its capacity for self-development, and lead the autonomous region in accomplishing economic and social leapfrogs. Specifically, it aims to double municipal GDP, fiscal revenue and farmers' and herders'per capita income and upgrade various social undertakings, such as boosting educational levels among both urban and rural residents, and improving public management and other services.

"To achieve coordinated urban and rural development, the municipal

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

government will focus on five points for the time being and the years to come," says Norbu Dunzhub. The first is the construction of a new countryside that will increase rural residents' incomes. During the 11th Five-Year Plan, Lhasa will invest no less than RMB 3 billion (US $375 million) in infrastructure construction in farming and pastoral areas. Secondly, the city will accelerate urban-rural integration by establishing an urban construction investment mechanism that will promote the development of conurbations around central satellite towns. lrasa will also focus on enhancing the urban economy and its comprehensive development capability. It will expand its characteristic industries based on its resource advantages (mines, building materials, Tibetan medicine and alpine bin-engineering and green foods), and promote social undertakings so that everyone can share the fruits of reform and opening-up.



拉萨市

拉萨市位于西藏自治区中部,是一座具有1 300多年历史的高原古城,1951年和平解放,1960年设市,现为自治区首府。全区政治、经济、文化、交通中心。市区人口37.3万。畜牧业占主要地位,以饲养牦牛、羊、马为主。工业主要有电力、水泥、皮草、机电、制药、纺织等部门。农作物主要有青稞、小麦。

拉萨是我国历史文化名城之一。是世界上最具特色、最富魅力的城市。海拔约3 500米,是世界上海拔最高的城市之一。终年日照强烈,拥有"日光城"之称。拉萨藏传佛教盛行,市内和郊区有众多的宫殿寺庙,布达拉宫、大昭寺、色拉寺、哲蚌寺等早已驰名海内外。拉萨没有公交车,人力三轮车为主要交通工具;出租车不打表,市内一律10元,出城双方面谈。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

Tashi delek 扎西德勒
Buttered tea 酥油茶
temple 寺庙
palaces 宫殿
Jokhang Temple 大昭寺
Potala Palace 布达拉宫
Sera Monastery 色拉寺
Drepung Monastery 哲蚌寺
Buddha's Mountain 佛山
Norbu lingka 罗布林卡
Barkhor Street 八廓街
Gandan Monastery 甘丹寺
Lhasa Hotel 拉萨饭店
Himalaya Hotel 喜玛拉亚饭店
Tashi Restaurant 扎西饭店
Namtso Restaurant 天湖餐厅
Snowlands Restaurant 雪域餐厅
Paradise Island 天堂鸟俱乐部
Yindu Nightclub 银都夜总会
Silk Road 丝绸之路
Boomerang Bar 回力吧
Cosy Cafe and Bar 客斯特西餐厅
People's Hospital of Tibet 西藏自治区人民医院
Lhasa People's Hospital 拉萨市人民医院

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 2 昆明 Kunming

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. The city is nicknamed "City of Spring" due to the fact that it is covered all the year round with the rich verdure of trees and plants.
   昆明又称"春城",得名于长年的葱翠树木。
2. Endowed with a pleasant climate, the city's 15 000 square kilometers of land is adorned with more than 400 kinds of flowers.
   全市占地1.5万平方公里,气候宜人,有超过400种花。
3. Kunming is world-famous for its abundance of camellias, orchids, azaleas and Primula malacoides.
   昆明因盛产山茶、兰花、杜鹃、报春花而著名世界。
4. Among the major scenic spots of Kunming are the Dianchi Lake, the Cuihu Lake, the Village of Ethnic Culture.
   其中主要景点有昆明滇池,翠湖,民族文化村。
5. Yunnan is populated by 25 minority nationalities, which makes up almost fifty percent of the total number of 55 in the whole country.
   云南25个少数民族、差不多占全国总数为55个少数民族的一半。
6. Stone Forest Located in Lunan County 86 km southeast of Kunming, it is known as the " First Wonder of the World ".
   路南县石林位于昆明东南部86公里,它被称为"世界第一奇迹"。
7. Yunnan Ethnic Villages, situated six kilometers south of Kunming, is a 2 000 mu theme park bordering on the south by the Dianchi Lake.
   云南民族村,是位于昆明南部6公里处的滇池南畔一个2 000亩的主题公园。
8. Nobody knows exactly how many folk dances there are in Yunnan.
   没有人知道到底在云南有多少民族歌舞。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

9. Many dances are carried down from generation to generation completely.
许多舞蹈都是一脉相承代代相传的。
10. Dai nationality has a population of more than 840 000, and live mainly in Xishuangbanna.
傣族有人口 84 万多，主要居住在西双版纳。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

B 简介 rief Introduction

Kunming, which is situated in central Yunnan and north of the Dianchi Basin, is skirted on three sides by mountains, with one side opening onto the Dianchi Lake. The city is nicknamed "City of Spring" due to the fact that it is covered all the year round with the rich verdure of trees and plants. Endowed with a pleasant climate, the city's 15 000 square kilometers of land is adorned with more than 400 kinds of flowers.

Kunming is world-famous for its abundance of camellias, orchids, azaleas and Primula malacoides, which can be found in the Kunming Botanical Garden, where 4 000 varieties of tropical and subtropical plants grow profusely. Kunming is also a renowned historical and cultural city in southwest China. In ancient times it was an important gateway to the celebrated Silk Road which conducted to Tibet, Sichuan, Myanmar and India. The city's highland scenery is alluring, its karts landform is bewitching. Its people are known for their varied and exotic habits and customs, and its land is pockmarked with historical artifacts, places of cultural interest, and gardens landscaped with a picturesque taste. Among the major scenic spots of Kunming are the Dianchi Lake, the Cuihu Lake, the Village of Ethnic Culture, the Jindian (Golden Temple) Park, the Western Mountain Forest Re-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

serve, the Stone Forest, the Jiuxiang Scenic Belt, the Yuantong Mountain, the Grand View Pavilion, and the Qiongzhu Temple.

Paragraph 2

Climate 气候

Kunming belongs to a low-latitude monsoon climate, does not have bitter cold in winter or extreme heat in summer. The annual temperature averages around 14.5 ℃ (about 58.1 F), and foliage remains green all year thus obtain its name of the 'Spring City'. January is the coldest season at about 8 ℃ (about 46.4 F) while July is the hottest month with an average temperature of 18 ℃ (about 64.4 F). While there is no obvious peak or low seasons for tourism in Kunming; many visitors prefer the lively period from March to October.

Since the temperature between day and night may vary between 12 ℃ (about 53.6 F) to 20 ℃ (about 68 F), pack warm clothing for night, carry sunglass, and apply sun block. Take along water and fruits to avoid dehydration.

Because during the Kunming rainy season, May to October, the temperature may drop suddenly, a lined raincoat is recommended.

Paragraph 3

Stone Forest 石林

Located in Lunan County 86 km southeast of Kunming, it is known as the "First Wonder of the World". "It is a waste of time without being in the Stone Forest while visiting Kunming" is a local saying to express the deep love of the local people toward this world wonder. The quintessential kart landscape makes every tourist lost in wonder.

Going through the Stone Forest, you will be surrounded by the high—rising stone peaks, layer after layer of green hills, and wide- spread stone peaks of the forest. What a stone world ! The scenery of "Figure of Ashi-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

ma", "Shi Ba Xiang Song" (originated from Chinese love story "Liang Shanbo and Zhu Yingtai") and " Lotus peak " make people greatly admired; the spots of " One Piece of Thread Sky", "Close Call", "Sword Peak Pond" are astonishing; Right in here, you will be astonished at the unique peaks and strange caves, the flying-down mountain spring, and the plateau lake. All these knitted together to present before you a picture of natural beauty, leading far into a merry dreamland.

Paragraph 4

Y民俗村
unnan Ethnic Villages

Yunnan Ethnic Villages, situated six kilometers south of Kunming, is a 2 000 mu theme park bordering on the south by the Dianchi Lake and on the west by the famous Western Mountains Scenic Area.

The famous historical and cultural city of Kunming is in the north of the villages. Each of the 26 ethnic peoples of Yunnan will have a village built on the premises, and there will also be a square symbolizing unity among various ethnic groups, a theatre for the performance of ethnic songs and dances, a folklore museum, and a museum of ethnic waxworks. When completed, the Yunnan Ethnic Villages will become an epitome of Yunnan as a multi-ethnic province, and an immense garden in south Chinese horticultural and landscaping traditions.

Paragraph 5

F云南民族歌舞
olk Dances in Yunnan

Nobody knows exactly how many folk dances there are in Yunnan. Many believe that there are at least about 300 different dances with hundred names and thousands of dance steps, which categorized by how they dance, could falls into six big groups, namely, dance to drums, dance to songs, dance to strings, dance to lamps and random dances.

Many dances are carried down from generation to generation com-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

pletely. Most of them have been refined, developed and standardized through years of festivals, performances and ceremonies. Being regarded as a live museum of history, the folk dances in Yunnan have been protected and preserved in the different places where the dances originated.

You may appreciate the pure beauty, primitive as Va and Jingpo People's Dances or refined and graceful as Dai People's Peacock dance, of the folk dances, and at the same time, get to know a little bit about their history and culture for there are rich social, historical and cultural information behind every dance.

Paragraph 6

The泼水节 Water Splashing Festival

Dai nationality has a population of more than 840 000, and live mainly in Xishuangbanna, known as "Land of Peacocks" and Dehong Prefectures in which people believe in Hinayana of Buddhism. Dai people has a long history. They are characteristics of a gentle disposition. They are good-looking and you will be amazed to find that even in a remote area every woman wear beautiful make-up. they have been long well- known for their dancing skill. Most of Dai villages are built along rivers with thatch bamboo houses.

The Water Splashing Festival, held by the Dai Nationality in the sixth month of the Dai calendar (in the middle of April), is the grandest ceremonial occasion for the Dai. It is also known as the festival for bathing Buddha. The festival is related to the Buddhist legend of dragon sprinkling fragrant showers on Lord Buddha at his birth. The Buddhist legend has gradually been mingled with the customs of the Dai people since their conversion to Buddhism. Currently, the festival is a combination of the Flower Collecting Festival and the Water Splashing Fair.

At present, Water Splashing Festival is a traditional festival for the Dai people in Xishuangbanna and other places to celebrate Dai Calendar New Year, and to give best wishes to each other. The festive activities include

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

bathing Lord Buddha, sprinkling water onto each other for good fortune, dragon boat racing, launching rockets and the Kongming Lantern, going to the fair, etc. Young girls dance the Peacock Dance accompanied by the elephant leg drums. Young boy and girl throw a finely embroidered purse to the person he or she is in love.

Paragraph 7

A过桥米线 cross Bridge Rice Noodle

Across Bridge Rice Noodle (Yunnan Guoqiao Mixian) is one of the featured specialties of Kunming and Yunnan. It has three main parts: a bowl of extremely hot chicken broth, various slices of meat, including chicken, fish, and meat up to nine varieties, with various seasonings and rice noodles.

Preparation: Add meat and seasonings to the soup first, then the rice noodles. Season with pepper powder, gourmet powder, fried chili, and chopped onion; the flavorful soup is colorful red, green, yellow and white.

The most authentic and tasty Across Bridge Rice Noodles are served at the Qiao Xiang Yuan (Culture Street Branch). It is located at No. 2 in Wenlin Jie, Jinma Biji Square.

Paragraph 8

S昆明购物区 hopping of Kunming

Kunming offers many local products. The interaction of different cultures, religions and colorful lifestyles offers visitors so much to see and buy. It is an ideal place to find local products and souvenirs of your trip to Yunnan.

Kunming is famous for local handiwork including ivory and woodcarving, Dai Jin (brocade made by Dai artisans), and Dai Zhu Bian (Dai bamboo basketry).

Kunming ivory carving with a more than 40-year history is an exquisite

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

handiwork offering plane and three-dimensional carving. Carved ivory birds, flowers and images are valuable and popular as collections and precious souvenirs.

Note: As a rule, ivory and ivory articles are forbidden to be taken out of China. In China, bring out ivory articles or ivory carving needs strict checkup. The testimonial issued by relative governmental department is required.

Wood carving in Kunming is exhibited mainly in wood furniture including chairs, benches and tea tables. Furniture with enchased marble is classical and elegant.

Most Dai women can weave Dai Jin, a kind of drapery with colorful and unique designs used to make bags, curtains, bedclothes, cushions, etc., making excellent gifts for relatives and friends.

Dai people are also clever at making articles of bamboo. Dai families live in bamboo houses in which everything is made of bamboo including cabinets and hats.

Also available are excellent local products such as dried mushrooms, tropical fruits and batik. We suggest you go to a Wal Mart supermarket to avoid false special products; prices are reasonable.

Paragraph 9

N夜生活 ightlife of Kunming

As well as offering a wide variety of places to visit during the day, Kunming has a vibrant night life. As darkness falls a whole new range of interests await you.

For those people resident in Kunming who is enthusiastic about nightlife, Kundu night market will be the most familiar to them. It is a place that concentrates on dinning, tourism, shopping as well as culture. Here you can find Teahouse, coffee house, Internet bar, local snacks and so on, aiming at different kinds of people. Its location is right beside the Yunnan University. See the below carefully chosen activities:

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Hump Pub: The most famous in Kunming supplying all sorts of wine, beer, also internet service, and performance by an energetic band on weekends. Here is a gathering place for the tourists to exchange travel experience. If you are lucky enough, you may even encounter some expert on traveling.

Address: Luyou Shangsha, Jinbi Lu

Face to Face Coffee House: It is run by a famous local painter, thus be full of cultural atmosphere. Tasting a cup of coffee here, you'll also have the chance to communicate with some artists, view and admire the host's works. On every Friday, the bar will hold art performance and intercourse.

Address: No. 47, Wen Lin Lu

For those who'd like to relax in a cinema, New Kunming Cinema in the middle part of Nanping Lu is the very one can meet your high requirements. 10 movie halls, family balcony, song and dance performance hall, drink house, snack bars take care any of your desire.

Besides, Xijie Bar in Wenlin Jie and Yihuchun Tea House in Cuihu Nan Lu are also recommended.

Cultural Links
文化链接

春城昆明

“春城”昆明是云南省的首府，由于世博会的举办，提高了昆明在世界上的知名度。在不到500万人口的城市中，聚居着汉、彝、白、傣、哈尼、纳西族等少数民族。

昆明的名胜古迹众多，旅游景点遍布全市，逐渐形成了以石林、滇池风景区为重点，沿安宁-石林公路的景区旅游线。

“天下第一奇观”——路南石林不仅有“阿诗玛”美丽动人的传说，还有哈尼人多彩的民族风情；位于昆明以南的滇池为我国第六大淡水湖，有着高原明珠之称；位于滇池之滨的云南民族村，浓缩了云南少数民族的精华；还有大观楼、西山公园……构成了昆明的美丽风景。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

World Horticultural Exposition Garden 世界园艺博览园
Dianchi Lake 滇池
The Gold Horse and Jade Cock Archways 金马碧鸡牌楼
Zhenqing Cultural Square 真庆文化广场
Yuantong (Accommodating Tact) Temple 圆通寺
Tanhua Temple 昙华寺
Black Dragon Pool 黑龙潭
Western Hills 西山
Kai Wah Plaza International Kunming 佳华广场酒店
Harbour Plaza 海逸酒店
Bank Hotel Kunming 昆明邦克饭店
Kunming New Era Hotel 新纪元大酒店
Jixin Yunnan Flavor Restaurant 吉金园
Laozhiqing Restaurant 老知青
Face to Face Cafe 面对面咖啡馆
Camel Bar 骆驼酒吧
Sheng Di Tao Sha 圣地淘沙
Journey To The East 东方之旅
Teresa Pizza 比萨店
Golden Sun Italy Cafe 金太阳西餐厅
Yunnan Provincial People's Hospital 云南省第一人民医院
Kunming First People's Hospital 昆明市第一人民医院
First Affiliated Hospital of Kunming Medical College 昆明医学院第一附属医院
Hekou Border Economic Cooperation Zone 河口边境经济合作区
Kunming Economic & Technological Development Zone 昆明经济技术开发区
Kunming High-Tech Industrial Development Zone 昆明高新技术产业开发区
camellias 山茶
orchids 兰花
azaleas 杜鹃
Primula malacoides 报春花
the Dianchi Lake 昆明滇池
the Cuihu Lake 翠湖湖
Village of Ethnic Culture 民族文化村
Lunan Country 路南村

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 3 大理 Dali

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Dali is a world-renowned tourist attraction. It is widely acclaimed as "the Oriental Switzerland", "the Chinese Geneva" and "the Pearl on the Yungui Plateau".
   大理是举世闻名的旅游胜地，被称为"东方瑞士"、"中国的日内瓦"和"云贵高原上的一颗明珠"。
2. To the Dai people, the green peacock is a symbol of peace, happiness and good fortune.
   在傣族人眼里，绿孔雀是和平、幸福和吉祥的象征。
3. It can be dated back to the year 1382 during the Ming Dynasty (1368—1644) and has been among the top listed historical cities of China since 1982.
   它的历史可追溯到明代(1368—1644)的 1382 年，从 1982 年起被列为中国历史文化名城之一。
4. Traditional Bai ethnic minority folk houses and marvelous scenery have been attracting many visitors.
   传统的白族民居及神奇的自然风光吸引了许多游客。
5. According to literature, Dali Ancient City was a gateway to the Silk Road in Southwest China, and also served as a seat of government and a major military barracks for Yunnan Province in ancient times.
   根据文献记载，大理古城是通往中国的西南丝绸之路，并曾是云南古时政府所在地和主要兵营。
6. The city layout was uniform, with five main streets from south to north and eight main streets from east to west.
   城市规划很整齐，东西有 5 条路，南北 8 条街。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

7. The traditional Bai ethnic minority folk houses give the city distinctive feel, unlike any other Chinese city.
传统的白族民居与众不同。
8. When people walk along the cobble-paved streets in the ancient city, a sense of primitive simplicity and elegance will be invoked.
当人们沿着鹅卵石铺设的大街走在古城街头，一种古朴、雅致的油然而生。
9. The newly-opened Foreigner Street is also a must-see.
新开放的老外街也必须一看。
10. The national minorities in the Dali area have many traditional festivals and gatherings.
大理少数民族地区有很多传统节日和集会。
11. With the development in machinery, electricity, textile, chemicals, papermaking, tea processing, marble products and so on, it has now become an industrial base in the west of Yunnan Province.
随着我国机械、电力、纺织、化工、造纸、茶叶加工、大理石制品等的发展，它已成为云南省西部的重要工业城市。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

B 大理简介 Brief Introduction

Dali City, situated in the west of Yunnan Province, has an area of 28 500 square kilometers with a population of 3 million.

Dali City possesses one of the country's seven freshwater lakes—Erhai Lake. There are big embankments along the banks of the lake. It belongs to the subtropical monsoon climatic zone with conspicuous dimensional climatic character, the annual average temperature of which is 15.1℃ and the yearly precipitation of 1 100 mm. It has the rich resource such as platinum

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

and marble and also gold, lead, brown coal (lignite), copper and rock salt (halite), etc. It is also rich in such resources as hydraulic power, forestry and mountainous grassland.

In the field of industries, it has placed the development of food industry as its priority industry with the development of mining, building materials, machinery, textile and other industries. In the field of agriculture, paddy rice, wheat, rapeseed, sugar cane and flue-cured tobacco and others are grown in abundance. In the area of communication, priority is given to highway traffic.

Dali City is a famous historic cultural city of China, once the capital city of Nanzhao regime and Dali Regime in the ancient China, a city of picturesque scenery. With the verdant greenery Erhai Lake as its center, the scenic spot and place of historic site of Dali constitute one of the major places of historic interest and scenic beauty of China. Besides, there are also such scenic spots and historic sites as the three Dali Pagodas, Butterfly spring and others. Traditionally well-known local products and specialties are the Bowl-Shaped Compressed Mass of Tea Leaves, Cigar, Zha-dyed cloth, Bow Fish and snow pear.

Paragraph 2

地理情况
n Geography

Dali is situated in the southwest of Yunnan and at the intersection of the Yunnan-Burma Highway and Yunnan-Tibetan Highway. It is 400 km. away from Kunming and one day's bus ride will bring you to Dali via Chuxiong Prefecture. Dali municipality covers an area of 1 457 square km. and is inhabited by 400 thousand people, composed of the Bai, Han, Hui, Yi, Lisu and other nationalities, among whom the Bai nationality makes up 64% of the total.

Dali City stands against Cangshan Mountain in the west and adjoins Erhai Lake in the east, and is embraced by undulating hills around. The elevation of the city proper is 1 974 metres. Dali is a highland city in low lati-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

tudes and its climate is of subtropical highland monsoon type. The weather is temperate, the annual mean temperature being 15℃ and rainfall 1 078 mm. The monsoon season falls on June through October, and there is no marked seasonal changes in a year. Abundant sunshine makes the weather warm, but the wind is very strong, so Xiaguan of Dali is known as "A City of Wind."

Paragraph 3

Minority Nationality Life 少数民族生活

The folk ways of the minority nationality are richly colourful. The architectural layout of "Sanfang Yizhaobi" (a courtyard with rooms on three sides and a screen wall on the remaining side) and "Sihe Wutianjing" (one big courtyard with four smaller ones at the corners of the main one) of the Bai nationality is elegant yet unsophisticated. "Every household has a water well and every family owns a number of potted flowers" are the tradition and common practice of the Bais. The attire of the Bai girls are brilliant and graceful, simple yet harmonious. The national minorities in the Dali area have many traditional festivals and gatherings, namely: the Benzhu Festival (worshipping the guardian saint or the local god of a Bai community), the Flower Festival, the March Fair, Raosanling Festival, Torchlight Festival and Lake Tour Festival. Among them, the March Fair is the most magnificent of all.

Paragraph 4

Dali Today 大理的今天

Dali today is full of vitality and prosperity in both the urban and rural areas. With the development in machinery, electricity, textile, chemicals, papermaking, tea processing, marble products and so on, it has now become an industrial base in the west of Yunnan Province. The mainstay in the economy of the city is the production of cigarettes, tea, marble articles,

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

clothing, cement and electric power. The Dali marble, Tuocha (white tea), furniture, tie-dyed cloth, straw woven hats, and plywood are well known both at home and abroad. In agriculture, Dali mainly produces rice, wheat, broad beans and maize. The species of rice "Dianyue No. 1" turns out 1 014 kilograms per mu (1/15 of a hectare) creating the highest record in China. And one crop of broad beans ranked the first in our country, yielding 514 kilograms per mu. In recent years, medicinal and perfuming crops are popularized. In sum, both in the city and around the countryside, Dali has become wealthy and prosperous, indeed a land of "fish and rice" in the west of Yunnan.

Paragraph 5

D大理古城
ali Ancient City

According to literature, Dali Ancient City was a gateway to the Silk Road in Southwest China, and also served as a seat of government and a major military barracks for Yunnan Province in ancient times. It enjoyed magnificent scale, with a wall length of 6 kilometers (3. 73 miles), a height of 7. 5 meters (24. 6 feet) and a thickness of 6 meters (19. 7 feet). There were four city gates facing west, east, north and south, upon which sat a gate tower. Four further towers were also placed at the four corners of the city wall. As it underwent many phases of prosperity as well as decline, only the city base remains till today. We can explore the mystery belonging to that period of history, especially through witnessing some parts of the city wall, the North City Wall Tower and the South City Wall Tower which were restored in 1982. The city layout was uniform, with five main streets from south to north and eight main streets from east to west, while market-places were neatly arranged within the city, which has remained unchanged to this date.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 6

Distinctive City 与众不同的城市

The traditional Bai ethnic minority folk houses give the city distinctive feel, unlike any other Chinese city. A typical house is characterized by "3 rooms and a wall screening" and "4 joints and 5 courtyards". "3 rooms and a wall screening" means that every house has a principle room and two wing-rooms and facing the principle room stands the wall screening. When the sun shines on the wall screening in the afternoon, the sunlight is reflected back to the courtyard, thus illuminating the whole area. '4 joints and 5 courtyards' means houses are built with four sides; and four courtyards in the joining parts of the houses' corners and one big courtyard in the center makes five courtyards. The decoration is another construction feature of the folk residences, paying great attention to the gate tower, the eaves and corners. The windows, doors and the wall screening are adorned with Jianchuan woodcarvings, colored patterns, marbles and wash drawings. The delicacy, freshness and elegance of their construction may be called first-class among folk residences in Southwest China.

When people walk along the cobble-paved streets in the ancient city, a sense of primitive simplicity and elegance will be invoked. Besides the Bai ethnic minority traditional folk houses, the houses all with grey-green roof tiles, peculiar workshops, temples, schools and churches with an antique flavor are scattered. Traditional artworks made of marble, such as pencil vases, striped screens, and a variety of woven handicrafts made of fine straw are laid chockablock on both sides of the street to be appreciated and purchased. The newly-opened Foreigner Street is also a must-see, providing snacks with the traditional flavors of the Bai ethnic community, as well as the famous "Three-course Tea" ceremony for receiving guests that includes "bitter tea", "sweet tea" and "final tea".

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 7

History 历史

Dali is an ancient city with a history of more than a thousand years. Both the Kingdom of Nanzhao in the Tang Dynasty (618—907) and the Kingdom of Dali in the Song Dynasty (960—1279) designated Dali as their capital. The long history and splendid culture endowed Dali with a rich reserve of relics. Facing the Erhai Lake and backing against onto Cangshan Mountains, Dali maintains its traditional crisscross network of thoroughfares and the two gate towers in both north and south of the city. The four Chinese characters that mean the City of Documents on the top of the tower are the most noticeable. Long time ago, there were gate towers in north, south, east and west. Two of them were destroyed later. Houses in the city are covered with black tiles and surrounded by stonewalls. All the doors and windows are carved with dragons and phoenixes, plain but elegant. Each household has a small garden. Flowers can be seen all the time throughout the year. Streams from Cangshan Mountains flow in front of the residential houses. That explains why some people say Dali is a city with streams and flowers in every household. Relics in this city add wonder to the city. The most famous ones are the Chongsheng Three Pagodas in the northwest of the city, the Hongsheng Pagoda in the northwest of the city, the stone steles at the foot of Xiangshan Hill recording how Emperor Shizu of the Yuan Dynasty (1271—1368) claimed Yunnan.

Cultural Links 文化链接

大理浓郁的民族风情

大理是以白族为主体的多民族聚居区.在各民族携手并肩共同迈向现代化的时代,多姿多彩的民族风情依然随处可见。比如性格豪爽的彝族同胞逢年过节都要“打歌”跳乐,有道是“打歌打到太阳落,跳起黄灰做得药”,服饰华丽的苗

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

族同胞“吹起芦笙脚就痒,山山岭岭作舞场”,傈僳姐妹的山歌唱得山鸣谷应,藏族兄弟的舞姿如同雄鹰翱翔。各民族在语言、服饰、音乐舞蹈、风俗习惯等方面仍然保持着自己的特色。白族崇尚白色,服饰色彩明快,对比强烈。日常生活使用白语,书面语言通行汉文。在白族生活中,民居建筑最富于地方特点,建筑多为“三房一照壁”、“四合五天井”的二层楼格局,特别讲究门楼装饰,飞檐斗拱,富丽堂皇。婚俗方面,白族男子到女家上门与娶媳妇到男家一视同仁。婚礼幽默风趣,以掐新娘表示祝福,在洞房内烧辣子表示亲热。白族好客,流行“三道茶”礼仪,即依次向宾客敬献苦茶、甜茶、蜜茶,寓意“一苦、二甜、三回味”的人生哲理。宗教信仰方面除了信仰佛教或道教之外,全民族都信奉各村各寨的保护神——本主。白族节日繁多,除与汉族相同的节日以外,还有许多本民族独有的节日,如“本主节”、“栽秧会”、“朝花会”、“三月街”、“火把节”等等,火把节为云南许多民族都有的节日。而白族的火把节独具特色,被列为仅次于春节的重大节日,每年农历六月二十五日举行。相传是为了纪念坚贞不屈的古代女英雄柏洁夫人,节日期间妇女染红指甲。村村寨寨竖起大火把,青少年挥舞小火把相互喷火以示祝福,并有跑马、串田等传统活动,因而又是个祈求水稻丰收的农事节日。万人聚会的男女情爱歌舞节日有“蝴蝶会”、“石宝山歌会”、“绕三灵”等。“绕三灵”为男女老少尽情歌舞的节日,连续三天三夜,被称为白族的“狂欢节”。

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

Dali Prefecture Museum 大理自治州博物馆	Chinese Geneva 中国的日内瓦
The Cangshan Mountains 苍山	Dai people 傣族人民
Erhai Lake 洱海	green peacock 绿孔雀
Erhai Park 洱海公园	Dali Ancient City 大理古城
Butterfly Spring 蝴蝶泉	marvelous scenery 神奇的自然风光
Sanyue Street 三月街	Do Yao Fall 大姚瀑布
Oriental Switzerland 东方瑞士	Longwang Lake 龙王塘
Cibi Lake 茨碧湖	North Ya 北街
Jingang Bridge 金刚桥	Jizu Hill 鸡足山
	Weibao Hill 巍宝山

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 4 贵阳 Guiyang

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Guiyang is on a tributary of the Wu River in the center of the Guizhou province.
   贵阳位于乌江支流，居贵州省的正中央。
2. Standing at an elevation of 3 000 feet, Guiyang is dominated by the mis-shrouded hills.
   贵阳海拔 3 000 英尺，周围全是云雾笼罩的山峰。
3. The climate in Guiyang is mild throughout the year.
   贵阳的气候全年温暖。
4. Guiyang is very wet during the monsoon months of April through August.
   4 月至 8 月的梅雨期，贵阳非常潮湿。
5. Guiyang has a steel mill, as well as factories producing diesel engines, mining machinery etc.
   贵阳有钢厂，也有生产柴油机、挖掘机械等设备的工厂。
6. Unlike their Spanish equivalent, these bullfights do not pit man against beast, but bull against bull.
   与西班牙斗牛不同的是：这里的斗牛不是人与牛之战，而是牛与牛之战。
7. The fish is first descaled and gutted, then covered with fine salt for three or four days.
   首先把鱼去鳞去内脏，撒上盐放三到四天。
8. This is toasted pieces of bean curd with a romantic name.
   这种豆腐有着一个非常浪漫的名字。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

9. The bean curd is first cut into small cubes and soaked in soda water, then toasted over a slow fire until the surface turns bright yellow.
首先把豆腐切成小方块,用苏打水浸泡后,用文火烤成金黄色。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

位置
Location

Guiyang is located on the east slope of Yunnan-Guizhou Plateau, in the middle of Guizhou Province, with the east longitude 106°07′ ~ 107°17′ and the north latitude 26° 11′ ~ 27° 22′. It neighbors Weng'an, Longli, Huishui and Changshun counties of Qiannan Buyi and Miao Autonomous Prefecture to the east and south; Pinba County of Anshun Prefecture and Zhijin County of Bijie Prefecture to the west; Qianxi and Jinsha counties of Bijie Prefecture and Zunyi County of Zunyi City to the north. It covers a land area of 8 046 km^2, accounting for 4.56% of the total area of the province.

The area of Guiyang urban districts (Yunyan, Nanming and Xiaohe) is 158 km^2, about 1.97% of the total. Yunyan is in the north while Nanming and Xiaohe in the south. The area of the suburban districts (Huaxi, Wudang and Baiyun) is 2 248 km^2, about 27.99% of the total. Huaxi is on the southwest of the city proper, Wudang on the northeast and the west, Baiyun on the northwest.

Qingzhen City is in the west of Guiyang, with the area of 1 492 km^2, 18.58% of the total; Xiuwen is in the north, with the area of 1 071 km^2, 13.33% of the total; Xifeng is in the north, with the area of 1 037 km^2, 12.91% of the total; Kaiyang is in the northeast, with the area of 2 026 km^2, 25.22% of the total.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 2

A 区域划分 dministrative Area

In 2000, Guiyang had jurisdiction over 6 districts, 1 city, 3 counties, 53 townships (including 19 nationality townships), 30 towns, 34 subdistrict offices and 1997 village (neighborhood) committees.

In which, Yunyan District administered 15 subdistrict offices, 1 town and 254 neighborhood (village) committees; Nanming District administered 15 subdistrict offices, 2 townships and 243 neighborhood (village) committees; Xiaohe District administered 2 towns and 55 neighborhood (village) committees; Huaxi District administered 11 townships (including 7 nationality townships), 3 towns and 185 village (neighborhood) committees; Wudang District administered 7 townships (including 2 nationality townships0, 6 towns and 153 village (neighborhood) committees; Baiyun District administered 5 townships (including 2 nationality townships), 4 subdistrict offices and 100 village (neighborhood) committees; Qingzhen City administered 6 townships (including 3 nationality townships), 4 towns and 342 village (neighborhood) committees; Xiuwen County administered 6 townships (including 1 nationality township), 4 towns and 229 village (neighborhood) committees; Xifeng County administered 6 townships (including 1 nationality townships), 4 towns and 170 village (neighborhood) committees; Kaiyang County administered 10 townships (including 3 nationality townships), 6 towns and 266 village (neighborhood) committees.

Paragraph 3

M 贵阳的现代史 odern History

Guiyang City was liberated on November 15, 1949. Guiyang Municipal People's Government was established on November 23. In the same time, Guiyang Prefecture was also set up, administering Guizhu, Xiuwen, Kaiyang, Xifeng, Huishui and Longli counties, and the prefectural administra-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

tive office was located at Guizhu County (Huaxi). In 1952, Guiyang Prefecture was abolished and Guiding Prefecture was set up.

In 1954, Guizhu County was put under the administration of Guiyang City. In 1958, Guizhu County was abolished. In the suburb of Guiyang City, Huaxi and Wudang districts were set up. Approved by the State Council, Qignzhen, Xiuwen and Kaiyang counties of Anshun Prefecture as well as Huishui County of Qiannan Autonomous Prefecture were put under the administration of Guiyang City. In 1959, Baiyun Town was established which was equivalent to an administrative unit being directly subordinate to Guiyang City. In 1963, Kaiyang County was put under Zunyi Prefectural Administrative Commissioner's Office, Xiuwen and Qingzhen counties under Anshun Prefectural Commissioner's Office, and Huishui County under Qiannan Autonomous Prefecture. In 1973, Baiyun District was established. In 1992, Qingzhen County was altered to Qingzhen City. Approved by the State Council, since January 1, 1996, Qingzhen City and Xiuwen, Xifeng, Kaiyang counties (that is, 1city and 3 counties) all put under the administration of Guiyang City. In January 2000, Xiaohe District of Guiyang City was established which was approved by the State Council.

"Zhu" is the abbreviation for Guiyang City because it is located at the south of Mount Guishan.

Paragraph 4

Mineral Resources 矿产资源

52 kinds of minerals have been discovered in Guiyang, including coal, iron, silicon, barite, marble, kaolinite, bauxite, as well as phosphorus, sulphur and mercury ores. The reserve of bauxite is 0.43 ×109 t, accounting for 20% of that of the country. There are nine super, large or medium-sized deposits, concentrated on Xiuwen County and Qingzhen City, among which Maochang Bauxite Mine (Qingzhen City) has the reserve of 0.15 × 109 t. It is a famous super bauxite mine in our country, with higher grade. Al_2O_3 content is 70% on the average, iron content is less than 5% and the

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

ratio between Al and Si is 7.87. Guiyang is one of the three national large bases for phosphorus mining, concentrating more than 70% of the high quality phosphorous ores of our country. The coal reserve is 0.9 × 109 t, distributing over "one city and three counties" and three suburban districts. Moreover, there are iron ore of 23.96 × 106 t, pyrite of 27.78 × 106 t and mercury (metal content) of 2 683t.

Paragraph 5

C婚丧习惯
ustoms in Weddings & Funerals

The cooked glutinous rice is the essential food for the young men and women of the Miao people during the course in love. In Chengbu area of Hunan Province they present each other the glutinous rice cakes painted with mandarin ducks as the keepsake. On the wedding ceremony, the bride and the bridegroom should drink "jiaobeijiu" (Cross-cupped Wine, at the dinner the new couple should drink from each other's cup); the person presiding over the wedding ceremony should ask the bride and the bridegroom to eat the glutinous rice cakes painted with the patterns of dragon, phoenix and baby.

Paragraph 6

C交通与交流
ommunication and Transportation

There are 8 main roads and branch lines in and out of the Development Zone, among them the high-grade southwest ring road is an important channel that goes through Guangdong and Guangxi to the Pacific Ocean. The Development Zone is only 5 kilometers from the city downtown, 10 kilometers from Guiyang 4-Degree International Airport. As for the Railway transportation, the Zone is only 2 kilometers from the South Station (*largest organizing railway station in southwest China*), 5 kilometers from the East Station (dealing with odd batches), 3 kilometers from the Passenger Station, and with West Station (dealing with whole-carriage transporta-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

tion) right there in the Zone.

Paragraph 7

投资亮点
Investment Priorities

To seize the good opportunity in the Western Development Campaign, the Development Zone encourages the establishment within the Zone of such enterprises as with high technology, high economical profit, high additional value, and highly intensive technology. And these enterprises are supposed to be energy saving, water-saving, space saving, and without pollution. Special priority is due to the following industries: bio-engineering; IT enterprises; natural medicines, green foodstuff; photoelectron technology, and integrative photoelectric machinery equipment; aeronautic and astronautic technology and products; fine machinery, fine instruments, fine electric motors and appliances, household digital electric appliances; web management equipment production, computer software development; fine chemistry, new type materials, new type energy; parts and fittings for automobiles and planes; bionomics and environment protection technology and products.

Paragraph 8

服装服饰特点
Characteristics in Dresses and Personal Adornments

In case the Miao girls in rich dresses would join together, it should display a beautiful silver world. To be fond of wearing the silver ornaments is the natural instinct of them. The Miao girl rolls up the chignon on the top of her head, wearing a 20cm-high delicate silver flower crown, with six long or short silver up-warping wings, on which the patterns of two dragons playing with a pearl are made. In some areas, besides some silver pieces inserted on the silver crown, a pair of some one-meter long silver ox horns may also be inserted into the crown, with colored ribbons tied at the tip of the horns, thus bringing out the nobility and beauty to the best of the Miao

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

girl. Along the lower edge of the silver crown, hang many silver colored braces with a row of pretty silver objects. There are several necklaces with different sizes on the neck of the Miao girl, mostly interlinked up with pretty silver pieces (on which flower patterns msde) and pretty silver rings. The Miao girl also wears the silver lock and the silver collar weight in front of the chest; while, the silver cloak with many pretty silver-bell weights hanging, on the back. The earrings and bracelets are all made of silver. Only the two sleeves come into the view of the fire-red embroidery. Nevertheless, there is still a circle of silver adornments on the cull of the sleeve. The splendid dress and adornments of the Miao girls may weigh up to several kilograms, some may be accumulated and handed down from generation to generation. The Miao girls have always enjoyed the good reputation of "Surpassing the beauty of the goddess when they wear bright-colored clothes and silver adornments". The Miao's silver adornments are made with resplendent and fine workmanship, the wonderful workmanship excelling nature. It fully demonstrates the intelligence and capability of the Miao people.

The skirt of the Miao girl is called Baizhequn —the pleated skirt. In fact, there may be 500-odd pleats on only one skirt. The skirt of the Miao girl has many layers, some even up to 30 or 40 layers on one skirt. The skirts, from spinning and weaving, dying and bleaching, sewing and making, to the last procedure of pattern drawing and embroidering, would be all completed independently by the Miao girls themselves. In addition, they also embroider their flower waist-belts, their flower aprons, etc. All these are extraordinary splendor and so many beautiful things that one simply cannot take them all in.

Paragraph 9

S小吃 Snacks

Si Wa Wa (Sliced Vegetable Baby) could well be the cheapest snack in Guiyang. It literarily means the Baby because it takes the shape of a baby

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

in swaddling clothes. Actually it is a thin cake made of flour and stuffed with various sliced cooked vegetables such as the carrot, radish, celeries and other vegetables. Sour and spicy juices are necessities when tasting the Si Wa Wa. Chang Wang Mian (Chang Wang Noodle) could be the most popular snack in Guiyang. The name of Chang Wang implies auspiciousness. With a long history of more than 100 years, Chang Wang Noodle has been highly-praised by the people of Guiyang.

Lian'ai Doufu Guo (The Bean Curd in Love) is another famous Guiyang snack. It has an interesting name and also an interesting method of preparation that is to cut a piece of bean curd horizontally, fill it with vegetables and sliced meat, then to toast the bean curd until it turns golden and then sprinkle with sesame oil and other condiments. The finished bean curd tastes excellent! As for its interesting name, it is told that lovers often share the bean curd with each other, which add romance to the food; hence the name. Locals have this snack together with the soy sauce, vinegar, pepper and shallot.

Spring Chicken is another savory snack in Guiyang. Bai Shi Ji Spring Chicken Restaurant on Xingguan Lu enjoys great fame all over Guiyang. It also has branches outside of Guiyang in major cities such as Kunming and Chengdu.

Cultural Links
文化链接

郎节山的传说

每年农历六月初六,在郎节山,是布依族传统节日。到了这天,郎节山人山人海,车水马龙。布依"六月六"郎节山何时兴起,这里有一段动人的传说。

相传古时候,六枝特区落别一带由于家规很严,男婚女嫁必须听从父母之命。不知过了多少年,有个姑娘名叫纳妹,长得如花似玉,被这一带的土司王坝龙的儿子看中,于是媒人上门提亲,结果,纳妹的父母看王坝龙家有权有势,硬逼女儿嫁给王的儿子。可是女儿生死不愿,天天茶饭不思。

有一天,正值是六月初六,布依山寨家家户户正忙于包着粽粑,欢度着

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

这一传统的盛大的节日，惟有纳妹愁眉苦脸地爬上“坡哄茶”（布依语，即坝湾民间的一座山名）采豆豉叶去制作毽子，然而坡上一片豆豉叶也没有，她坐在一堆沙包上哭诉自己的心事。这时，山下小道上走来一位英俊的后生，被山上的悲泣声感动得停下来，他便唱道：“哪林鸟雀叫动听？哪家阿妹好声音？歌声搅到哥心上，为何事啊诉苦音。”纳妹随着歌声传来的方向边寻找边唱道：“阿妹声音本难听，只因颇也（布依语：即父母）逼成亲，今日上坡解心闷，采豆豉叶消消心。”他们唱呀唱，纳妹觉得这是一个聪明、能干的后生，便从坡上下来，见后生长得一表人才，就鼓起勇气说：“远方的阿哥，今天过大年，你来这里干啥呀？”后生回答后，两人互相说了来意。这天，后生和姑娘在坡哄茶山下唱了一天歌，都哭成泪人。他俩决心带头冲破布依山寨父母包办婚姻的封建习俗。于是，他们约定第二天再来。

第二天，正是农历六月初七，天蒙蒙亮，纳妹和后生都按时到了，他俩把毽子当媒人，将山下小溪清水当甜酒，高高兴兴地成亲了。他俩不敢回家，就在坡哄茶附近建了间房屋，过着幸福的生活。由于纳妹和后生在坡哄茶山下相遇的日期正巧是农历六月初六，因此后人就将此地定为布依族“六月六”郎节山。每年农历六月初六至初七，附近数万布依族青年便会身着艳丽的盛装聚集这里。这两天，山脚下，竹林间，田坎上，传出对对恋人悠扬的歌声情语，他们通过玩毽子等活动方式，互相了解，寻求爱情，直到初七才依依不舍地离去。

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

Feishan Street 飞山街	First People's Hospital of Guiyang 贵阳第一人民医院
Jiaxiu Building 甲秀楼	Guiyang Economic & Technological Development Zone 贵阳经济技术开发区
Jinding Hill 金顶山	Guiyang High-Tech Industrial Development Zone 贵阳高新技术产业开发区
QianLing Park 黔灵公园	Wu River 乌江
Jueyuan 觉园餐厅	
Mingjianwagang 民间瓦缸 The Little Beer House 小小啤酒屋	
Affiliated Hospital of Guiyang Medical College 贵阳医学院附属医院	

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 5 重庆 Chongqing

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Chongqing was well known as the capital of China during World War Two.
   在第二次世界大战期间,重庆曾是中国的陪都。
2. Chongqing means double celebration in Chinese.
   重庆在汉语中的意思是两次庆祝。
3. Chongqing is one of the "three furnaces" in China.
   重庆是中国"三大火炉"之一。
4. Chongqing is also named "Hill's city" or "Fog City".
   重庆又被称作"山城"或是"雾都"。
5. By 2009, the towns and temples in Yangtze Gorges will be flooded.
   到 2009 年,三峡的城镇和寺庙都会被淹没。
6. The Yangtze Gorges were created 30—50 million years ago.
   三峡形成于 3000 万—5000 万年前。
7. The Yantze Gorges was a result of collisions between the Indian and the Eurasian continental plates.
   三峡是印欧大陆板块碰撞的结果。
8. The Three Gorges Dam is currently being built that will displace a million people.
   正在修建的三峡大坝坝址将使百万人搬迁。
9. The Himalayas and its foothills was primarily made of limestone, except for the site of the Three Gorges Dam is granite.
   喜马拉雅山及其他附近山峰主要由石灰岩构成,惟独三峡大坝坝址由花岗岩石构成。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

10. These are also some relics in the Chongqing museum.
还有一些遗迹文物在重庆博物馆。
11. These are the people whose hanging coffins you look for in the streams above the Yangtze.
这就是那些你在长江水上旅行时看到的悬棺。
12. You might race a dragon boat and look for wild monkeys and hanging coffins.
你可乘坐龙舟探寻野猿和悬棺。
13. About 125 kilometers from Chongqing, Dazu Stone Carvings is the site of the Buddhist carvings.
距离重庆约 125 公里，有一组佛教石雕，叫大足石刻。
14. Dazu Stone Carvings are superb works of Buddhist religious art.
大足石刻是佛教工艺极高的雕刻品。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

B 重庆简介 rief Introduction

Situated on the upper reaches of the Yangtze River. Chongqing is the commercial, industrial and transportation hub of China's southwest as well as the home of China's spiciest cuisine. In 1997, Chonqing City and a large surrounding area of what was then eastern Sichuan Province became the fourth municipality in China, under the direct control of the central government in Beijing. It borders the provinces of Hubei, Hunan, Guizhou, Sichuan and Shaanxi and has been designated as the beachhead for the development of the poorer western regions of the country. The city is the center where resettlement of refugees from the Three Gorges Dam project was coordinated. It is known as one of the four "furnace cities" in China, with blazing hot, humid summers and cold, foggy winters.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 2

A区域划分 Administrative Division

Covering an area of 82 400 square kilometers, the city of Chongqing has 40 administrative divisions of the district / county (autonomous county/ city) level under its jurisdiction, including 15 districts (Wanzhou, Fuling, Yuzhong, Dadukou, Jiangbei, Shapingba, Jiulongpo, Nan'an, Beibei, Wansheng, Shuangqiao, Yubei, Ba'na, Qianjiang, and Changshou), 4 cities of the county level (Jiangjin, Hechuan, Yongchuan, and Nanchuan), 21 counties /autonomous counties (Qijiang, tongnan, Tongliang, Dazu, Rongchang, Bishan, Liangping, Chengkou, Fengdu, Dianjiang, Wulong, Zhongxian, Kaixian, Yunyang, Fengjie, Wushan, Wuxi, Shizhu Tujia Autonomous County, Xiushan Tujia-Miao Autonomous County, Youyang Tujia-Miao Autonomous County, and Pengshui Miao-Tujia Autonomous County). Centering around the principal urban area of Chongqing, or Chongqing proper, the other districts, counties, autonomous counties and cities are located around Chongqing proper like many stars shining around the bright moon, forming a cluster of modern cities with big, medium and smaller cities well-organized in groups and in a network system. At present, Chongqing is an extra-large metropolis, the most populous city that covers the largest area, a city with most administrative divisions in China.

Paragraph 3

P人口与民族 opulation and Ethnic Groups

Han people make up the bulk of the population of Chongqing. The city is a harmonious home for the Han and 50 national minorities such as Tujia, Miao, Hui, Manchu, Yi, and Tibetan. People of different ethnic groups live in harmony, and together they participate in the city's political, economic and cultural affairs, creating the glorious history and culture of the city. By

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

the end of 2006, the total population of Chongqing was 34,300,000. People of national minorities, mainly Tujia and Miao, make up 6.37% of the total population of the city. People of different ethnic groups still keep their respective traditional customs and habits. The Tujia people have their hand-waving dance, the Annual Fair, and local operas such as the nuo opera with masked dancing, and the Huadeng opera, while the Miao people have their Autumn Fair, the Mountain-climbing Festival; besides, some national minority people have their Horse and Sheep Festival, Torch Festival, and keep other traditional practices such as weeping at the wedding and dancing at the funeral ceremony. The Tujia people are well-known for their houses built on hillside supported by poles, and the Miao people are famous for their traditional embroidery and wax printing. These varied and colorful local practices and customs make a great attraction to tourists from home and abroad.

Paragraph 4

The City Flower 市花

Camellia, a plant of the camellia family, is a small evergreen tree with 73 different species. It has a long florescence, pollution resistant, and easy to grow. It has bright blossoms of pale red, purplish red, white, or multi-colored. Its petals may have a variety of patterns. It has been cultivated in the area of Chongqing for more than 2 000 years. Su Shi (1037—1101), a famous poet of the Song Dynasty, wrote some famous lines in praise of camellia: "With all the pollen taken by the humming bees, the flowers remain fragrant, sweet as honey." In Zhiziqiao, Shigang, Banan District, there is still an ancient camellia tree of 400 years old. Camellia can be found everywhere in Chongqing, in parks, scenic spots, in front of the houses, on balconies of tall buildings. Camellia was officially made the city flower of Chongqing in 1986.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 5

市树
The City Tree

Ficus lacor is a tree with deciduous leaves, of banyan genus of the mulberry family. With its deep roots, strong trunk, and thriving branches and leaves, it has great vitality, grows fast, and enjoys a long life. The tree can grow on thin soil in hot, damp climate, and is pollution resisting. It can even grow well on high cliffs. There are many places in Chongqing that are named "huangjue" or, as the local people pronounce it, "huangguo", after the tree. An ancient book Shui Jing Zhu (A Record of Rivers) of the Northern Wei Dynasty (386-534 A D), noted, "the water of the Yangtze then goes east through the Huangjue Gorge known as Tongluo Gorge today." And in the Tu Jing (A Book of Pictures) of the Song Dynasty (960-1279) there is the description "At the foot of Tushan Mountain, there are huangjue ficus lacor trees; and below the trees there is the Huangjue Ferry Crossing". In Chongqing today, there are quite a number of places named after the tree: Huangjueya, Huangjueping, for instance. The ficus lacor was officially made the city tree of Chongqing in 1986.

Paragraph 6

完整的商业基础
Complete Commercial Infrastructure

Chongqing is the only hub of water, land and air communications in western China. It is the meeting place of the trunk railways and artery expressways that run east-west and north-south across the Chinese continent, and fleets of three thousand-ton ships can reach Chongqing port from east along the Yangtze. The Jiangbei Airport of Chongqing is a key trunk line airport developed by the State. Chongqing is one of the centers of load in the electricity grid in western China. With its large quantity of coal and natural gas, Chongqing has a highly reliable energy supply.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 7

A强劲的工业基地
Strong Industrial Base

Chongqing is a strong industrial base with industries complete in range and branches and capable of forming comprehensive systems of chains of industries. The city used to be one of China's old industrial bases, and now it is vigorously developing five industries: car and motorcycle making, chemicals and medicine, construction and building materials, foodstuffs, and tourism. At the same time it is accelerating its hi-tech industries represented by IT engineering, biological engineering and environment protection engineering.

Paragraph 8

A潜在的巨大市场
Large Potential Market

Chongqing is a populous city, and its people are going from simply having enough food and clothing to leading a relatively comfortable life. People and towns and factories are moving of from flooded areas, infrastructure construction is going on large scale, projects of biological protection and treatment of pollution are under way, and industries in the old industrial base are in the process of modernization and upgrading. All these factors may result in tremendous demands in consumption and needs for investment.

Seizing the historic chance of the great development of West China, a strategy of the central government, Chongqing is carrying out its strategic plan of building the city into a center of business and trade, finance, science and technology, information and culture, a pivot of transport and telecommunications and a modern industrial base based on hi-tech industries, and is speeding up its economic and social development, serving as a window to the outside world, exerting its economic influence to other areas and helping the development of southwest China and the upper reaches of the Yangtze River.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Cultural Links
文化链接

重庆名字的由来

重庆是一座有着悠久历史文化的名城。远在两万多年前的旧石器时代，这片土地上就出现了人类的生息繁衍活动；到新石器时代，已有较稠密的原始村落，分别居住着夷、濮、苴、奴、宾、共等八个民族。正是这些最早的重庆居民，创造了重庆最古老的历史文明。约在三四千年前的夏商周时期，以重庆为中心地带的大片地区，已形成强大的奴隶制部族联盟，统称“巴”。相传夏禹王分华夏为九州，梁州所属就有“巴”。在甲骨文中，也有关于“巴方”的记载。郭沫若先生对此有诗赞曰：“巴蜀由来古，殷周已见传”。从“巴”到“重庆”，名称屡经历史的变迁。周慎靓王五年（前316年），秦灭巴国，置巴郡。秦始皇二十六年（前221年）分天下为三十六郡，巴郡为其一。汉朝时候巴郡称江州。魏晋南北朝时期，先后更名荆州、益州、巴州、楚州。隋文帝开皇元年（581年），以渝水（嘉陵江古称）绕城，改楚州为渝州。这就是重庆简称“渝”的来历。北宋徽宗崇宁元年（1102年），因渝人赵谂叛诛事，朝廷虑“渝”有“变”之意，改渝州为恭州。孝宗淳熙十六年（1189年），皇子赵惇接踵于正月封恭王，二月受内禅即帝位，自诩“双重喜庆”，遂将恭州升格命名为重庆府。重庆得名迄今已八百余年。重庆自秦以来，历代王朝都在此设置郡、州、路、道、府等行政机构。辛亥革命后，1921年设重庆商埠督办；1929年设市；1935年5月5日，国民党政府颁令，将重庆升格为直辖市。抗日战争爆发后，国民党政府西迁重庆，于1937年11月定重庆为“战时首都”，1940年再定重庆为陪都。

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

Eling Park 鹅岭公园	Daning River Excursion: The Three Little Gorges 长江小三峡
Dazu Rock Carvings 大足石刻	Shibaozhai (Precious Stone Fortress) 石宝寨
The Three Gorges of the Yangtze River 长江三峡	

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Zhang Fei Temple 张飞庙
Chongqing Institute of Technology 重庆工学院
Chongqing Jiaotong University 重庆交通学院
Chongqing Normal University 重庆师范大学
Chongqing Technology and Business University 重庆工商大学
Chongqing Three Gorges University 重庆三峡学院
Chongqing University 重庆大学
Chongqing University of Posts and Telecommunications 重庆邮电学院
Fuling Teachers College 涪陵师范学院
Sichuan Fine Arts Institute 四川美术学院
Sichuan International Studies University 四川外语学院

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 6 成都 Chengdu

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. It is easy to climb to heaven than take the Sichuan Road.
   蜀道难，难于上青天。
2. Chengdu was the capital of Shu during the Three Kingdoms.
   成都是三国时期蜀国的首都。
3. Chengdu is an educational and industrial center.
   成都是教育和工业中心。
4. Dujiangyan is an ancient irrigation system, and the Temple of Marquis Wu is a temple in memory of Zhuge Liang.
   都江堰是古代灌溉工程，武侯祠是纪念诸葛亮的庙宇。
5. And Dufu's cottage is a residence of the famous Tang poet, Du Fu.
   杜甫草堂是唐代著名诗人杜甫的居所。
6. Du Fu lived in this cottage for four years and wrote 240 poems.
   杜甫在这个草堂住了4年，写下了240首诗歌。
7. Chengdu is the capital of "Heavenly State", habitat of giant pandas.
   成都被称为"天府之国"，是大熊猫的栖息地。
8. Located in the west of Sichuan Basin and in the center of Chengdu Plain.
   成都位于四川盆地西部，成都平原中部。
9. Consisting of abundant mineral resources, the land is extremely fertile.
   这里土地肥沃，包含丰富的矿产资源。
10. The history of Chengdu can be traced back 2 400.
    成都历史可以追溯到2 400年前。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

11. Chengdu is also the main inland access city to Tibet.
成都也是通往西藏的交通要道。
12. Fertile lands and a favorable climate endow the city with picturesque surrounding scenic landscape.
肥沃的土地和良好的周边环境，使成都风光更迷人。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

B 成都简介 rief Introduction

Chengdu, the provincial capital of Sichuan province, is famed for the spicy Sichuan food that has become popular around the globe. Many foreign business are attracted to Chengdu as a result of the low costs that amount to as little as one third of that of investing in cities like Shanghai. Among the latest arrivals is chipmaker Intel, which last year chose Chengdu as the site for a US $375 million semiconductor plant. Announced amid much fanfare, the decision was seen as a landmark in China's push to encourage investment away from the eastern coastal regions.

Chengdu is the biggest and richest province in western China, and as a result has a strong market potential for foreign retailers. A wander through the streets of downtown Chengdu certainly confirms that local residents like to shop. The city has three Parkson department stores, three branches of the French hypermarket chain Carrefour (two more are planned) and several other chains well established or with plans to open soon. Carrefour meanwhile announced plans to move its central and western China headquarters from Shanghai to Chengdu—a sign of the importance of western China in the company's growth strategy.

Today, agriculture remains an important pillar of the provincial economy, attracting investment from several foreign firms among them

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Germany's Bayer, which has an animal pharmaceuticals plant near Chengdu employing 140 people.

Another huge development, still awaiting approval from the central government, is the city's subway system. The plans at the moment are for two lines, with a network much longer than is already operational in Shanghai.

Chengdu is also well known for its many extremely popular tea gardens, scattered about the city's many temples and parks. On a balmy summer's day there can be few better places to kick back and enjoy a bottomless cup of tea, playing cards and catching up on the news.

Chengdu's cavernous new steel and glass airport gives the immediate impression of a city that thinks well beyond its official status as a provincial capital, Already the major transport hub for southwestern China, Chengdu has its sights set on going global. Although more than 1 000 kilometers inland, road and rail links with the southern port of Beihai are being upgraded with central government funds. At the same time, work is underway to develop the inland container port at Chongqing, four hours' drive from Chengdu, further opening up China's vast interior to international trade. On the aviation scene meanwhile, Chengdu's airport was recently given the formal go-ahead to build a second runway; international carriers such as Lufthansa and Air France are considering starting direct flights to Europe; and plans are under discussion for flights south to Australia. With daily flights to Lhasa, it is also a gateway to Tibet.

Paragraph 2

地理情况
n Geography

Located in Southwest China, Chengdu is the regional capital of Sichuan province. Covering an area of 12.39 square Km, its east longitude extends from 102°54′to 104°53′and its north latitude extends from 30°05′to 31°26′.

The average cultivation index of the city has reached 38.2%. Chengdu enjoys favorable agricultural conditions, and it has long been known as the

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Storehouse of Heaven. It is the important production base of commercial vegetable oil, vegetables, fruits and Chinese medical herbs.

Chengdu has typical sub-tropical humid climate, with an annual temperature of around 17.5°. The annual rainfall of the city is 1,1246mm, with an annual sunshine of 1 042-1 412 hours. There are several climatic zones in Chengdu, namely, warm temperate zone, temperate zone, frigid-temperate zone, sub-frigid zone and frigid zone, making the city favorable for agricultural production and tourism development.

Paragraph 3

H历史 istory

The history of Chengdu can be traced back 2 400 when the first emperor built his capital here and named the city. Through thousands of years its original name has been kept and its position as the capital and as the significant center of politics, commerce and military of the Sichuan area (once called Shu) has remained unchanged. Since the Han (206BC-220) and Tang (618-907) Dynasties when its handicraft industry flourished, Chengdu has been famous for its brocades and embroideries. Shu embroideries still enjoy a high reputation for their bright colors and delicate designs, ranking among the four main embroideries in China. Chengdu was the place where the bronze culture, an indispensable part of ancient Chinese culture, originated, the place where the Southern Silk Road started, and the place where the earliest paper currency, Jiaozi (not the dumpling!), was first printed. It is listed among the first 24 state-approved historical and cultural cities and owns 23 state and provincial cultural relic units.

Paragraph 4

E生存环境 nvironment for Living

Five suburban forest parks in Chengdu, covering an area of over 20 000 mu, have been opened to the citizens. These parks are distributed

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

in each and every direction, and their names are: Xingfu Meilin Park in the east, Yongkang Forest Park in south, Lianghe Forest Park and Qingyang Luzhou Forest Park in the west and Beihu Park in the north. These parks are built to satisfy the dreams of the residents, who wish to be "a boisterous world outside and a natural and tranquil world inside". Parks provide not only green fields and spaces, but also a refined way of living. Living by the park, one can talk a walk or do some exercise in the morning or evening and breathe in the fresh air. At weekend, one can also take his family to have a good time in the park to feel Mother Nature. This is a way to realize harmonious unity between the human beings and Mother Nature. The world's top 500 enterprises like Carrifour, Lafarge, Motorola, Toyoto and Coca Cola have been pursuing a happy career in Chengdu and, witne the living environment here. Just as software engineers of Motorola have put it, "the vitality of Chengdu keeps us afresh at any time, thus we are always prepared for the next inspiration." And this is also why Intel chose Chengdu to generate more wealth and joy. The company chose Chengdu for its chip package testing program, whose investment volume amounted to $375 million. This is the largest investment project made by Intel in China, and also the largest foreign investment in Chengdu or western China as a whole.

Paragraph 5

C文化和民俗
Culture and folklore

The Sichuan cuisine is famous for being very spicy, but in fact only slightly more than 30% of dishes officially labeled "local" rely on chili pepper. The reputation for hot food is, however, much older than the use of peppers, which became common only in the 17-18th century.

Chengdu's cuisine is considered to be one of China's most outstanding. The many local specialties include Grandma Chen's Bean Curd (Mapo doufu), Chengdu Hot pot, and Carrying Pole Noodles (Dan Dan Noodles).

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

An article by the Los Angeles Times (2006) called Chengdu "China's party city". Chengdu outnumbers Shanghai in the number of tea houses and bars despite having less than half the population. The inhabitants have a reputation both within Sichuan and in China at large for having a laid back attitude and for knowing how to enjoy life.

Paragraph 6

E 经济 conomy

Chengdu is home to several key industries and markets in China that both significant for domestic and international markets. First, Sichuan ace and the Chengdu region have long been the capital of Traditional Chinese Medicine (TCM). This combined with recent intrigue into pharmaceuticals has launched Chengdu into one of the major pharmaceutical R &D centers in China, as well as the leading R&D region in Western China. Similarly, Chengdu's Hi-tech Industrial Development Zone has attracted a variety of multinationals (Intel and Microsoft), as well as domestic powerhouses such as Lenovo.

Paragraph 7

F 金融业 inancial Industry

Now, Chengdu is not only the gateway of West China for foreign financial institutions, but also a booming town for Chinese domestic financial firms. The Chinese monetary authority, People's Bank of China (China's central bank), set its southwest China headquarters in Chengdu City. In addition, almost all domestic banks and securities brokerage firms located their regional headquarters or branches in Chengdu. At the same time, the local financial firms of Chengdu are strengthening their presences nationally, notably, West China Securities, GuoJin Securities and Chengdu Commercial Bank. Moreover, on top of banks and brokerage firms, the flourish of local economy lured more and more financial service firms to the city to

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

"capitalize" the economic growth. KPMG opened this first west China office in Chengdu City this October, and before the inauguration of KPMG Chengdu office, its rival, Ernst & Young, had already integrated Chengdu into its global operation for several years.

Paragraph 8

S 小吃 nacks

Dandan Mian

Dandan Mian, a kind of hot-spiced noodles or spicy peanut noodles, is a famous Chengdu snack. It is flavored with a sauce containing dried shrimp, shredded preserved vegetables, crushed roasted peanuts, sesame seeds, chilli oil, soy sauce, vinegar and garlic. The dish is widely spread in Sichuan region, which is often served as banquet snack.

Sichuan Pancake

Sichuan pancake is characterized by its diverse kinds and unique flavors. Sliced chicken, beef, steamed meat, and entrails of oxen are often used as its fillings.

Oxen Soup

Oxen Soup served in Lao Huo Cheng Traditional Pancake Restaurant is distinctive. This traditional restaurant has clear tables and white wallpapers, making it fresh and fashionable.

Zhu Er Ba (Meat ball with glutinous rice wrapped outside)

It is featured by careful selection of raw materials, delicate cooking and superb quality. Glutinousness and softness are two features of this snack, making it one of the most famous snacks of Luzhou City. Salty filling and sweet filling are adopted in Luzhou Zhu Er Ba. Salty filling is cooked with fresh pork, winter bamboo shoot, scallion, MSG and salt; sugar, dried orange skin, osmanthus sugar or rose sugar and sesame are used in sweet filling. The wrapper of this snack is cooked with glutinous rice and rice starch. The newly steamed ball is white and shining, which resembles a cooked piglet, so the snack got its name, which literarily means Piglet

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Cake.

Jellied bean curd

The main procedure of jellied bean curd cooking lies on bean curd making. Soy bean milk, gypsum and braised sauce are needed in preparation of bean curd.

Cold noodle with shredded chicken

As a traditional Sichuan snack, it has a long history and great influence on the whole province. It has spread to all parts of the country in recent years, particularly the vast northern areas. Its cooking method: put machine-made noodle into boiled water. The noodle shall not be boiled too soft. Vegetable oil should be added into the noodle while it is still hot, then shake the noodle so as to lower its temperature. When the noodle do not stick to each other, the dish-cold noodle is finished.

Pearl Ball

The Pearl Ball of the North China tend to be made by meat which are with salty flavor, while the Sichuan Pearl Ball is featured by its sweetness and fragrance, with fillings such as sesame and white sugar inside. Glutinous rice is wrapped outside, which appeals to us by its crystal outlook. The Pearl Ball could be taken to ease the hot flavor of other Sichuan dishes.

Paragraph 9

S川剧 ichuan Opera

As a local opera popular in Sichuan, Yunnan and Guizhou Provinces, Sichuan opera is an important part of Chengdu culture. It began in the Qing Dynasty (1644-1911) as a combination of five operatic tunes introduced from other regions. Retaining the Sichuan dialect, the role of Chou (Clown) covers a comparatively large part of the performance; Sichuan opera often presents a charming witty atmosphere. Its varied performances, such as Bianlian (Changing faces), Gundeng (Rolling lamps) and Tuhuo (Spitting fire) are very popular; Bianlian (Changing faces) is famous even overseas for its mysterious techniques.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

The famous Changing faces can be seen in the Sichuan Opera Theater, at No. 20, Zhuangyuan Street and also in Shunxing Old Tea House, third floor of Chengdu International Exhibition Center, No. 258, Shawan Road; in Shufeng Square inside People's Park, and in Shufeng Yayun Garden in the Culture Park.

Paragraph 10

P大熊猫繁殖基地
anda breeding base

As a genuine "homeland of giant pandas", Chengdu has panda distribution in Qionglai, Dali, Congzhou and Dujiangyan. In 1987, the Panda Breeding Base (thereafter refer to as the "base" in brief). Combining the geographical advantage and technological and personnel advantages in rescuing, artificial rearing and panda research of Chengdu Zoo, the base strengthened its effort in protecting the land for panda immigration, improving panda research and breeding, increasing the number of pandas and, beginning the training to return the pandas into the wild after the total number have increased to a certain degree to supplement and revitalize the panda species. Through transforming the crucial results of researches about "panda twins nursing", "panda artificial insemination" and "panda DNA finger probe and extraction of DNA", the base has successfully bred 48 pandas since its establishment. It covers an area of 600 mu, among which 24 383 m^2 in construction area, 16 883 m^2 in floorage, 18 000 m^2 in water area and 305 686 m^2 green area, with a coverage rate of 93.77% and greenbelt rate of 80.63%. And three museums are already built there, namely the panda museum, the butterfly museum and vertebrate museum, among which the panda museum is the earliest one of its kind in the world.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Cultural Links
文化链接

成都小吃

成都名小吃多由小商小贩在实践中创制出来。他们在长期经营中，或肩挑手提，或沿街开店设铺，在吃食的色、香、味上精心制作，天长日久，逐渐创制出某人或某个地点的名小吃，如春熙路的龙抄手，总府街的赖汤元，荔枝巷的钟水饺，耗子洞张鸭子，洞子口凉粉，长顺街治德号小笼蒸牛肉等等。如今，许多名小吃店虽已迁新址，但仍沿用旧名。

钟水饺

创始人钟少白，原店名叫“协森茂”，1931 年开始挂出了“荔枝巷钟水饺”的招牌。钟水饺与北方水饺的主要区别是全用猪肉馅，不加其它鲜菜，上桌时淋上特制的红油，微甜带咸，兼有辛辣，风味独特。钟水饺具有皮薄（10 个水饺才 50 克）、料精（上等面粉、剔筋去皮的精选猪肉）、馅嫩（全靠加工时掌握好温度、水分，肉馅细嫩化渣）、味鲜（全靠辅料和红油、原汤）的特色。

担担面

担担面是著名的成都小吃。用面粉擀制成面条，煮熟，舀上炒制的猪肉末而成。成菜面条细薄，卤汁酥香，咸鲜微辣，香气扑鼻，十分入味。此菜在四川广为流传，常作为筵席点心。

担担面中最有名的又要数陈包包的担担面了，它是自贡市一位名叫陈包包的小贩始创于 1841 年。因最初是挑着担子沿街叫卖而得名。过去，成都走街串巷的担担面，用一种铜锅隔两格，一格煮面，一格炖鸡或炖蹄膀。现在重庆、成都、自贡等地的担担面，多数已改为店铺经营，但依旧保持原有特色，尤以成都的担担面特色最浓。

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

The Temple of Zhuge Liang 武侯祠	Dujiangyan Irrigation Project
Wangjiang Tower Park 望江楼公园	都江堰水利枢纽工程
Yongling Mausoleum 永陵	Mount Qingcheng 青城山

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Jinsha Ruins 金沙遗址	Sichuan Road 蜀道
Dayi Lius' Mansion 大邑地主庄园	Three Kingdoms 三国时期
TV Tower in Chengdu 成都电视塔	Dujiangyan 都江堰
Sichuan University 四川大学	Du Fu's cottage 杜甫草堂
Southwest Jiaotong University 西南交通大学	Sichuan Basin 四川盆地
	Chengdu Plain 成都平原

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

6 华中地区
Central China

Unit 1 郑州 Zhengzhou

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Zhengzhou is one of the most important junctions of China's railways.
   郑州是中国最重要的铁路枢纽之一。
2. The capital city of Henan Province, Zhengzhou is located in the middle of China, about 760 km (about 472 miles) south of Beijing and 480 km (about 298 miles) east of Xi'an.
   郑州,河南省省会,位于中原地区。距北京 750 公里,在西安东部 480 公里处。
3. Zhengzhou, became a vital transportation hub.
   郑州是交通枢纽。
4. With a pleasant climate, Zhengzhou is welcoming all year round.
   郑州以气候宜人而著称。
5. The city is a national historical and cultural city and also the first destination for any Henan Tour.
   这座城市以悠久的历史和文化而成为河南游的首选。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

6. For anyone interested in Chinese ancient history and wishing to know more on it, Zhengzhou is one city that should not be missed.
对于对中国历史感兴趣或想更加了解的人来说,郑州不可错过。
7. Hui Mian (Cook noodles with mutton and vegetables) is a popular snack among local people.
烩面(把羊肉和蔬菜与面条同煮)是当地有名的小吃。
8. Jade Sculpture art has more than a three-thousand-year history in Zhengzhou.
郑州的玉雕已超过3 000年的历史了。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

B 简介 Brief Introduction

Zhengzhou, located in the Central China plain with the Yellow River to the north and Mount Songshan to the west, is the capital of Henan Province. At the junction of the Beijing-Guangzhou and Lanzhou-Lianyungang railways, it is also the political, economic, cultural, and transportation center of Henan. Zhengzhou is one of the most important textile centers in China, as well as having a well-developed machinery industry.

Paragraph 2

H 历史 History

Zhengzhou has a long history. As early as 3 500 years ago, it became the capital of the Shang Dynasty (17th- 15th centuries BC) which together with ancient Egypt, India, and Babylon, was considered to be one of the oldest civilizations of the world. Today cultural relics and historical sites abound in and around the city, attracting more and more tourists and ar-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

chaeologists both from China and abroad. At Anyang, a town to the north of Zhengzhou, tourists can visit ruins of the Shang Dynasty.

With its lush foliage, Zhengzhou is China's model for the planting of trees in urban areas and is therefore called the "green city."

Paragraph 3

Climate 气候

With a warm temperate continental climate, the annual average temperature of Zhengzhou is about 14.3 ℃ (about 57.7℉). The climate is comfortable, with bright sunshine and a clear distinction between the four seasons. The hottest month is July with an average temperature of about 27.3 ℃ (about 81.1 F), while the coldest month is January, with an average temperature around minus 0.2 ℃ (about 31.6℉) winter in Zhengzhou is cold though seldom snowy. However, rainfall is abundant during summer. Autumn is usually sunny and with long daytimes and is the best season for your travel to the city. If you are interested in visiting Zhengzhou in winter, heavy clothing is necessary, though sweaters and a jacket are enough during spring and autumn.

Paragraph 4

Nightlife 夜生活

A city's colorful nightlife reflects its prosperity. From the various activities of Zhengzhou people, we can see how as the capital city of Henan Province, it is making rapid progress and its inhabitants are becoming more and more fashionable. Most people like office workers will return home between 10 pm and midnight, while many modern young men will continue to enjoy the nightlife until some time after 2 am. These different habits from different groups of people help to make the nightlife of Zhengzhou rich and colorful.

The night view of the city is a sparkling one. You can hear the singing

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

of the city at Erqi Square with a music fountain and learn more about Chinese surname culture at Guangda Square as here is a hexahedral column standing 10 meters (about 33 feet) high upon which 114 Chinese surnames are carved. The Lucheng Square located in the Zhongyuan Lu is recommended where you can see the water screen film. In addition, discos, bars, clubs, cinemas and other entertainment venues will offer you plenty of enjoyment. There is a growing popularity for gyms and fitness centers among the people of Zhengzhou and more interesting is the fact that most locals like to participate in these healthy pursuits night. So you will also find various types of gyms here.

Paragraph 5

传统佳肴 Traditional Dishes

Liyu Sanchi (Three cooking methods of Cyprinoid) is the famous Zhengzhou traditional dish. The Cyprinoid, a type of Carp from The Yellow River is soaked in fresh water for two or three days prior to cooking to remove the earthy smell. A Cyprinoid is cut into three, with one fillet being fried; the other cooked with Sweet and Sour Sauce. The rest of fish, its head and tail are boiled together with radish slices to make a tasteful and nutrient soup. After you have enjoyed the fish, you can mix some noodles with the remaining sweet and sour sauce, which is flavorful.

Besides, gourmets have chances to try other Yu traditional dishes in Zhengzhou like Tong Zi Ji (Bittern Chicken), Si Tao Bao (Four-Boxed Birds of Duck, Chicken, Pigeon and Partridge), etc.

Paragraph 6

黄河游览区(郑州段) Yellow River Tour(Zhengzhou Sect)

The best place to experience the culture of the Yellow River is the Yellow River Scenic Area in Zhengzhou. It is about 30 kilometers (18.6 miles) northwest of Zhengzhou, situated on the southern bank of the Yellow

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

River. There are green lands, clear waters, pavilions, scattered statues with interesting histories, inside the scenic area. With more than 20 years of development, the scenic area is now a national tourist destination with modern amusement facilities, which appeals to thousands of tourists from all over the world. Zhengzhou Yellow River Scenic Area is the ideal viewpoint to appreciate the mother river of China.

Paragraph 7

Henan Museum 河南博物馆

Situated in the northern part of Zhengzhou, Henan Museum is a modern historic museum. From the architectural style of the museum to the treasures there stored, the history presented here will amaze you. The idea for the design of the museum comes from the aspect of the Astronomical Observatory, which looks mysterious and pyramid-like. Cultural relics housed in the museum are definitely precious. There are ancient stone carvings, bronze wares and jade articles of Chu (897—951) and workmanship of Ming (1368—1644) and Qing (1644—1911) dynasties. One item not to be missed is a rare sculpture of an ivory cabbage on which insects are vividly carved. It is said that sometimes one can not tell the ivory cabbage from a real one when glancing at the sculpture. Tourists should take Bus Nos. 42, 61, 69 and 72 to Henan Sheng Bowuguan Stop.

Paragraph 8

Local Products 当地特产

Jade Sculpture art has more than a three-thousand-year history in Zhengzhou. Such jade articles from Xinmi, Zhengzhou, are regarded as the most famous in China. Additionally, the jade sculptures are sold throughout Southeastern Asia, Western Europe and Northern America, etc. These jade items are emerald green and translucent with a hard quality, features that are considered to be necessary for classical jade ware by ex-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

perts. Honeysuckle is another local product from Xinmi, Zhengzhou. It is a kind of common and efficient Chinese herb used to allay sunstroke.

Huanghe (Yellow River) Inkstone is made from a clay deposit from the Yellow River. Blended with herbs, this inkstone is one of the four famous inkstones that have been used by calligraphers and artists over the centuries. Huanghe inkstone in vermilion or an eel yellow is highly regarded and both of which were popular among emperors and the literati of ancient China.

Huanghe (Yellow River) Cyprinoid is actually a common kind of fish but those from the Yellow River are famed for their fresh qualities and nutritious value. If you would like to try this delicious fish when in Zhengzhou, you can order a dish named Liyu Sanchi (Three cooking methods of Cyprinoid) in a Yu (Henan) style restaurant. The area also produces fruits such as dates, persimmons, pomegranates, watermelon and cherries etc. All these succulent fruits are worth trying for their flavor and quality.



郑州新生儿风俗

郑州的农村群众将生儿育女称为“得喜”，男孩儿为“大喜”，女孩儿为“小喜”。孕妇将要临盆时，旧时先请接生婆到家做好准备，让产妇坐在小板凳上，下置瓦盆或木盆接衣胞，盆内盛有温水，并放一只鸡蛋和一把锁。婴儿降生后，接生婆用温水给婴儿洗身，让产妇吃盆内的鸡蛋，说是可以再生子，锁则取出来挂在门口，意为锁住婴儿的性命。如果是生了男孩，衣胞埋在大门口，寓意男孩子将来能支撑门户；如果是生了女孩，衣胞则埋在院中树下，意为一朵花。

婴儿出生后，第二天其父要去告知岳母及亲友，称之为“报喜”。报喜时要带上礼品，礼品中包含着报喜的信息。礼品送到岳母家，岳母一看就明白女儿已经生了，并能悟出是男孩还是女孩。生男孩要带烧饼作为礼物，生女孩要带麻糖，有的则是生男孩抱只公鸡，生女孩抱只母鸡。婴儿出生第三天，当事人要向周围邻居赠送喜面条，岳母则拿着鸡蛋、挂面、红糖、大米四色礼物到女儿家“瞧三天”。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

旧法接生,因接生婆使用不消毒的剪刀剪脐带,极易感染破伤风,婴儿死亡率很高。在婴儿出生第九天,因为可能感染破伤风的时间已经过去,所以要"祝九",也有在第十二天庆祝的。这天,亲戚朋友及街坊邻里都来祝贺,主家设宴招待来客。接生婆特别受尊重,要请来并坐上席。姥姥家要送米面、红糖、鸡蛋、小孩衣服等礼物,亲友则给婴儿见面礼。酒席的最后少不了一碗喜面条,客人走时,主家要送些煮熟后染红的鸡蛋"回篮",称为"喜蛋",这个习惯已延续多年。

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

People's Park 人民公园
Royal Town Park 皇城公园
Old Town 故城
cave dwellings 民间窑洞
Henan Provincial Museum 河南省博物馆
Monument to the Great Strike of February 7 二七纪念塔
Henan Agricultural University 河南农业大学
Zhongyuan Institute of Technology 中原工学院
Zhengzhou University of Light Industry 郑州轻工业学院
Zhengzhou Institute of Aeronautical Industry Management 郑州航空工业管理学院
North China Institute of Water Conservancy and Hydroelectric Power 华北水利水电学院
Henan College of Traditional Chinese Medicine 河南中医学院
Henan Textile University 河南纺织专科学校
Yuda Palace Hotel, Zhengzhou 裕达国贸酒店
Dome Bressa 圆顶阁西餐厅
Westlake Spring Restaurant 西湖春天
Seventh People's Hospital of Zhengzhou 郑州第七人民医院

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

Unit 2 武汉 Wuhan

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Wuhan is really three cities: Hankou, Hanyang, and Wuchang.
   武汉实际是上由汉口、汉阳和武昌三镇组成。
2. Wuhan Yangtze River Bridge is the first bridge for both railway and highway on Yangtze River.
   武汉长江大桥是长江上第一座铁路、公路两用桥。
3. Yellow Crane Tower is a symbol of Wuhan.
   黄鹤楼是武汉的象征。
4. East Lake in Wuhan is bigger than West Lake in Hangzhou.
   武汉的东湖比杭州的西湖要大。
5. Yellow Crane Tower is 51 meters high with five-storeys. It was first built in 223 AD and inspired many famous poets, including Li Bai.
   黄鹤楼51米高，有5层。它最早建于公元223年，曾激起许多著名诗人的创作激情，包括李白。
6. Now what we see was reconstructed in 1981 based largely on the Qing version.
   现在看到的是1981年在清代原楼的基础上扩建的。
7. It is said that a wine shop was on the original site. The owner gave free wine to an old man who drew a picture of a yellow crane on the wall in gratitude.
   据说这里原是个酒馆。老板常给一个老者免费供应米酒，老者就在墙上画了只黄鹤作为酬谢。
8. After the old man left, the crane came to live and danced for the customers, and the owner became rich.
   后来老者走了，黄鹤就复活了向顾客们跳舞，结果老板迅速致富。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

9. When the old man returned decades later, he mounted the crane and flew off into the sky.
几十年后，老者回来了，他骑鹤飞向了蓝天。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

地理概况
n Geography

Wuhan is situated in the middle of Hubei Province of China, East Longitude 113°41′—115°05′, North Latitude 29°58′—31°22′. the east of Jianghan Plain, and the intersection of the middle reaches of the Yangtze River and Hanshui River. The Yangtze River and Hanshui River divide Wuhan into three parts: Hankou, Hanyang and Wuchang, which are generally known as Wuhan's Three Towns.

Wuhan belongs to subtropical humid monsoon climate. There are sufficient rainfall and sunshine as well as four distinct seasons. Climate here is pleasant generally. In recent thirty years, the average annual rainfall is 1269mm, mainly from June to August; annual temperature is 15. 8℃-17. 5℃, annual frost free period lasts 211 to 272 days and annual sunlight duration is 1 810 to 2 100 hours.

Wuhan occupies a land of 8494. 41 km^2, most of which is plain and decorated with hills and a great number of lakes and pools. Wuhan's climate is a subtropical monsoon one with abundant rainfall and distinctive four seasons. It has a population of 8 000 000 by the end of 2006.

Paragraph 2

H历史
istory

Wuhan is a famous historical and cultural city in China with a history of

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

3 500 years. Its three towns take advantage of the intersection of the Yangtze River and Hanshui River, and Hankou has been growing up swiftly. In 1861, Hankou was opened to trade with foreign powers. In 1927, National Government announced that Hankou, Wuchang and Hanyang were integrated to Jingzhao Region and named Wuhan, whose administrative system was first unified. Wuhan was liberated on May 16, 1949, and was the city directly governed by the Central Government by June 1954, afterwards, governed by Hubei Provincial Government. In Dec. 1986, the State Council promulgated that Wuhan was a famous historical and cultural city in China. In 1992, Wuhan was approved to be city open to the outside world.

Paragraph 3

E 经济交流 conomy and Trade

Wuhan is one of the cities with the most competitive force for domestic trade in China. Wuhan, close next to Shanghai, Beijing, and Guangzhou in its volume of retail, is among the top list of China's metropolises. Wuhan Department Store, Zhongshang Company, Hanyang Department Store, and Central Department Store enjoy highest reputation and are Wuhan's four major commercial enterprises and listed companies. Hanzhengjie Small Commodities Market has been prosperous for hundreds of years and enjoys a worldwide reputation. In recent years, some world famous commercial giants such as Wal-mart, Metro, and Carrefour all set up branches in Wuhan, and bring about more prosperity and stronger force of radiation.

Paragraph 4

I 工业 ndustry

Wuhan, one of the origins of China's modern industry, is China's traditional base of manufacture industry. Wuhan is one of the biggest automobile industry bases in China; in China, there are nine out of a hundred cars produced in Wuhan Citroen-Dongfeng. Wuhan is also one of the biggest i-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

ron and steel industry bases in China; Wuhan Iron and Steel Group is the third iron and steel consortium in China. In recent years, Wuhan focuses on the development of hi-tech industries and has become the biggest photo-electronic information industry base in China; Wuhan's China Optics Valley has become one of the places collecting China's hi-tech industries.

Paragraph 5

S科学教育 cience and Education

Wuhan is the scientific and educational center in Central China, with 35 higher educational institutions such as Wuhan University and Huazhong University of Science and Technology, which cover all the fields of science and technology and employ elites and explorers in these fields. Wuhan has formed a comprehensive scientific and educational strength ranking the third in China with its main force: three national development zones and four scientific and technologic development parks as well as numerous enterprise incubators, over 350 research institutes, 1 470 hi-tech enterprises, and over 400 000 experts and technicians.

Paragraph 6

T交通 ransportation

Wuhan is one of traffic hubs in China. Its capacity of communications at home and to foreign countries is among the top list of China's metropolises. Its arterial highways extend in all directions. Its downtown has formed the external cycle, middle cycle and internal cycle of fast lanes. Four arterial railways such as Jing-Guang, Jing-Jiu, Wu-Da and Han-Dan intersect in Wuhan, from which you may reach 25 provincial capitals in China by railway. Wuhan civil airliners can fly to China's 54 large and medium cities and Hong Kong; the international air-liners may straight reach Japan and ROK.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 7

三座大桥
The Three bridges

First bridge

The First Yangtze River Bridge at Wuhan was built over the Yangtze River (Chang Jiang) in 1957, carrying the railroad directly across the river between Snake Hill (on the left in the picture below) and Turtle Hill. Before this bridge was built it could take up to an entire day to barge rail cars across. Including its approaches, it is 5 511 feet (1 680 m) long, and it accommodates both a double-track railway on a lower deck and a four lane roadway above.

The second bridge

The second bridge, a cable-stayed bridge, built of pre-stressed concrete, has a central span of 400 meters The Wuhan Second Changjiang Bridge is 4 678 meters in length (including 1 877 meters of the main bridge) and 26.5 to 33.5 meters in width. Its main bridge heads are 90 meters high each, pulling 392 thick slanting cables together in the shape of double fans, so that the central span of the bridge is well poised on the piers and the bridge's stability and vibration resistance are ensured. With six lanes on the deck, the bridge is designed to handle 50 000 motor vehicles passing every day.

The third bridge

The Third Wuhan Changjiang Bridge was completed in September 2000. Located 8.6 kilometers southwest of the First Bridge, construction of Baishazhou Bridge started in 1997. With an investment of over 1.4 billion Yuan (about 170 million U.S. dollars), the bridge, which is 3 586 meters long and 26.5 meters wide, has six lanes and has a capacity of 50 000 vehicles a day. The bridge is expected to serve as a major passage for the future Wuhan Ring Road, enormously easing the city's traffic and aiding local economic development.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 8

黄鹤楼
Yellow Crane Tower

Yellow Crane Tower, one of Four Major Towers in China, is situated on Snake Hill of Wuchang District. It was said that Yellow Crane Tower was originally built in 223 AD with a history of over 1700 years. Previously it was destroyed in frequent disasters and rebuilt. The new Yellow Crane Tower was completed in June 1985, and listed by National Tourism Administration into National Best Forty Scenic Spots for Tourists.

Paragraph 9

湖北省博物馆
Hubei Museum

Hubei Museum, located by beautiful East Lake of Wuchang District, is one of the most famous museums in China and one of national key scenic spots. It has collected numerous cultural relics at national treasure level, of which the most famous is Zenghouyi Serial Bells of two thousand years ago, which were well preserved and unearthed in Leigudeng, Suixian County of Hubei. They are composed of dozens of serial bells of different sizes. Although they experienced thousands of years, their tone quality and tone color are still wonderful. The unearthed King Yue's Goujian Sword and King Wu's Fuchai's Spear of two thousand years ago are still splendid and sharp without any rust. The unearthed painted wares, used by ancient Chu people, are still colorful, whose wonderful shapes were hailed as the acme of perfection. Hubei Museum has collected Hubei ancestors' articles for everyday use and articles for war from Old Stone Age, New Stone Age to the Yuan, Ming and Qing Dynasties. The worldwide experts and tourists all marvel at these articles for the elaborate craft, wonderful shapes and ingenious design.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Cultural Links
文化链接

武汉风俗—煨汤待客

许多地方卖猪肉，都是连骨头带肉一起卖，买肉的人不愿要骨头，找熟人买，尽量少搭点骨头。武汉人买肉不一样，喜欢要骨头，特别是排骨，争相购买。排骨供应少时，人们起早去耐心排队等候，或者找熟人，想方设法买排骨。因为武汉人讲究煨排骨汤待客。如果贵客来了没有排骨汤，那是很失礼的，好像降低了待客的规格，对客人不够热情，大方。做客的也会觉得没有受到盛情的招待。地道的武汉人煨汤待客，并不只是把排骨汤当做席上的一道菜，而是在吃饭之前，先给客人盛一大碗，让客人吃肉喝汤。客人酒足饭饱之后；热情的主人还要劝客人再喝一碗汤。外地人开玩笑说：武汉人"奸"得很，客人去了，光用汤也把你灌饱了。多来个把客人，只要往沙吊子（煨汤的器具）里添瓢水就行了。

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

Yellow Crane Tower 黄鹤楼	中国地质大学（武汉）
The Ancient Lute Platform	Wuhan University of Technology
古琴台，又名伯牙台	武汉理工大学
Guiyuan Temple 归元禅寺	Huazhong Agricultural University
The Hubei Provincial Museum	(founded in 1898) 华中农业大学
湖北省博物馆	Central China Normal University
Wuhan Yangtze River Bridge	华中师范大学
武汉长江大桥	Zhongnan University of Economics
Wuhan University 武汉大学	and Law 中南财经政法大学
Huazhong University of Science and	South-Central University for National-
Technology 华中科技大学	ities 中南民族大学
Wuhan University of Science and	Hubei University 湖北大学
Technology 武汉科技大学	Hubei University of Technology
China University of Geosciences	湖北工业大学

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 3 长沙 Changsha

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Hunan is partly famous for Chairman Mao's birthplace.
   湖南之所以出名还因为它是毛主席的故乡。
2. Changsha is also known for its important 2 100-year old Han Excavation.
   长沙还因其出土了 2 100 年前重要的汉墓而闻名。
3. Changsha is the gateway to Zhangjiajie, a UNSCO World Heritage site.
   长沙是世界文化遗址之一张家界的门户。
4. Chairman Mao studied and taught in First Hunan Normal School in 1913—1918 and 1920—1921.
   毛主席 1913—1918 年在湖南第一师范学院求学,1920—1921 年在这里教书。
5. Hunan Cuisine, also known as "Xiang" Cuisine is renowned as one of the Eight Cuisines of China.
   湖南菜又称"湘菜",是中国八大菜系之一。
6. The peak time for night life in the city is during the period from one to two o'clock.
   夜生活的最佳时间是晚上一点到两点之间。
7. The recorded history of Changsha can be traced back 3 000 years.
   长沙有记录的历史可追溯到 3 000 年前。
8. The summer comes around the later May with high heat and heavy humidity.
   五月末,长沙因高温和潮湿而进入夏天。
9. Spring, during the months from March through May, is the best time to travel to the city.
   从三月到五月的春天,是这个城市最好的旅行时节。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

B 简介 rief Introduction

Changsha, founded in the 3rd century, is historically noted as a center of learning and cultured mandarins. But it is as a trading center that it earned its keep. It was one of the first cities in central China to be opened up officially to foreign trade, being given the status of Treaty Port in the early 1900s.

It was one of the many inland cities that benefited, if that is the word, from the decision in the 1950s and 1960s to shift factories and manufacturing capacity into the interior to make them less vulnerable to attack from the US or the Soviet Union. As a result, Changsha now has machinery and transportation equipment factories.

Changsha has set up several economic zones to help attract investment, of which the largest is the Changsha National Economic Technical Development Zone (CNETDZ), established in the early 1990s. More than 40 foreign companies are operating in the zone.

Changsha is located on the main north-south rail line through China, from Beijing to Guangzhou, and its airport has flights to 45 cities in China as well as international flights to Hong Kong, Bangkok and Seoul.

Paragraph 2

G 地理气候 eography and Climate

Xiang River and Changsha's riverbank at night Changsha is located at 111°53′-114°5′ east longitude and 27°51′-28°40′ north latitude, situated in the east central Hunan. Its terrain is high in the west and low in the east. There are many mountainous areas in the west and in the north. The Xiangjiang

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

River flows south to northwest; 296 m high Mt. Yuelushan is in the west; and Liuyanghe River (Liuyang River) and Laodaohe River (Laodao River) east.

Changsha has a monsoon climate within the sub-tropical zone, with annual average temperature being 16.8°C-17.2°C, 4.6°C in January and 28.6°C in July. Average annual precipitation is 1 422 mm., and the yearly frost-free period is 275 days.

The four seasons are distinct. Summer is long and broiling, with heavy rainfall, and autumn is comfortable with abundant sunlight. In winter, it is nearly rainless and not very cold, changing to rainy and wet weather with rapidly increasing temperatures in the spring.

Paragraph 3

C 文化生活 ultural Life

In recent years, Changsha has become an important creative center for TV and entertainment arts, with its many TV stations producing some of the most popular programs in China, including the most watched program ever on Chinese TV Super Girl, a Chinese female version of the UK Pop Idol or American Idol. These entertainment programs have brought along with it a new entertainment industry, including singing bars, dance clubs, theater shows, as well as related businesses like hair salons and fashion stores. Now it is not rare that some people will fly into Changsha to spend their weekends from as far as the northeastern city of Harbin.

Paragraph 4

D 龙舟节(端午节) ragon Boat Festival (Double Fifth)

This is a traditional festival in the country, which falls on the fifth day of May depending on the Chinese lunar calendar. Different places have their own celebration activities. In Changsha, the famous Dragon Boat Contest is held on the banks of the Xiang River. People, from all over the province,

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

come to the city to watch the magnificent performance. Competitors chosen are strong young men and they row at full speed to the vigorous drumbeats in order to reach the finish line. The cheers of the excited crowds echo under the blue sky. In some areas, people begin preparations up to one month before the event.

Paragraph 5

History 历史

Changsha is a cultural city with a long history. Results of the archaeological studies show that 7 000 years ago, people began to inhabit here. The legendary Emperors Yao and Shun were both buried in ancient Changsha. Changsha first got its name in the Western Zhou Dynasty (11th century-771BC) 3 000 years ago. In the period of the Xia (21st- 17th century BC) and Shang (17th- 11th century BC) dynasties, Changsha was part of the ancient Sanmiao Kingdom. It was an important city in terms of military affairs and was major area for rice production, both in the Spring and Autumn Period (770-476BC) and the Warring States Period (475-221BC). When the Qin Dynasty (221-206BC) unified China, Changsha became one of the 36 prefectures of the whole country. The capital of Changsha Prefecture was Xiangxian County (today's Changsha). This was the start of Changsha being listed within the administrative scope of China. In 202BC, the founder of the Western Han Dynasty (206BC-8AD) Emperor Gaozu conferred Wu Rui the governance of Changsha, and set up the State of Changsha. Then, Changsha was under the jurisdiction of Wu in the Three Kingdoms Period (220-280), and was renamed as Tanzhou in the Sui and Tang dynasties. Changsha was part of Hunan Province and changed into Changsha Prefecture in the Ming Dynasty (1368-1644). In the Qing Dynasty (1644-1911) it was known as the capital of Hunan Province. In 1922 it was reaffirmed as the capital of Hunan, and in 1933, Changsha City was established. Changsha welcomed its peaceful liberation on August 5, 1949, and a new chapter was unveiled in its history.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 6

投资亮点
Investment Priorities

Electronics information technologies and products; development and application of new materials; bio-engineering and products; high-efficiency and energy-saving technologies and products; integrated optic-electric-mechanic technologies and products; environmental protection technologies and products; chemical technologies and products; infrastructure building; cultural and entertainment facilities; new and applicable technologies, processes and materials based on traditional industries, and other new and high-tech industries.

Paragraph 7

湖南特色菜
Featured Human Specials

Three-Boxed Birds (San Ceng Tao Ji)

This name may seem a little strange and doesn't tell the story clearly. It was said that in 1920s, an official's wife had a stubborn headache and a doctor suggested that she buy a sparrow, a pigeon and a black-bone hen as ingredients for a Chinese herbal medicine soup. The doctor first put the small sparrow into the pigeon and then put the pigeon into the black-bone hen, hence the name three-boxed birds. Then the boxed birds were steamed with herbs for a long time and the finished dish comprised both the soup and meat for eating. The story doesn't say whether the lady's headache was cured or not. However, the dish became popular in the country.

Crisp Sesame Duck (Maren Xiangsu Ji)

A duck is fried in peanut oil until its skin turns golden. Spicy seasonings and sesame oil are then added to the fried duck. The finished duck is cut into pieces and made into assorted cold dishes. It is crisp, tender and has a savory taste.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Non-Yolk Eggs with Mushroom (Huagu Wu Danhuang)

No one will be surprised by a plate of eggs with a mushroom soup. However, when you try it, you will find the tender eggs have no yolk inside and the delicious soup will melt in your mouth.

The chef makes a tiny hole in the bottom of the eggshells and removes the eggs. Then the egg white with a prepared chicken soup and salt are put back into the shells again and cooked. The most delicate of these will have a smooth cover and tender taste.

Spicy Chicken Cubes (Mala Zi Ji)

This is probably the most typical local dish. It was said that the one who hasn't eaten this dish equals is one who has never eaten Hunan Cuisine.

Simply stir-fry the chicken dices with pepper, capsicum, vinegar, shaohsing wine over high heat. The finished dish should have a bright color and spicy flavor. It is easy to describe, but very hard to cook. The best place to enjoy it is Yuloudong Restaurant.

Paragraph 8

Nightlife 长沙夜生活

The people of Changsha are renowned for their performing arts and they have created various traditional folk performances of their own including local operas, storytelling, drum opera, acrobatics and other dramatic presentations. Traditional folk art was highly fashionable during a period of the city's history and many of today's theatres and opera halls in Changsha date from that time. Today, most of these places of entertainment present dynamic entertaining plays and performances that feature a blend of the traditional elements with more modern trends.

The peak time for night life in the city is during the period from one to two o'clock. This is when you will find the streets jammed with cars, enthusiastic crowds and shrewd peddlers. Around twelve, it is very hard to find an available taxi near the main thoroughfares of Shaoshan Lu, Furong Lu

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

and Bayi Lu as they are all kept very busy.

Paragraph 9

长沙经济技术开发区
Changsha Eco &Tech Development Zone

Changsha Economic and Technological Development Zone was approved as state-level development zone in February 2000. The zone now has a population of 43 000 and a developed area of 12.33 square kilometers.

Geographical Location

Changsha Economic &Technological Development Zone (CETDZ) is situated in the township of Xingsha in the eastern suburb of Changsha, capital city of Hunan Province.

Communication and Transportation

Beijing-Guangzhou railway complex runs 5 kilometers west of the zone. Beijing-Shenzhen State Highways No. 107 and Chengdu-Xiamen No. 319 converge here. Beijing-Zhuhai Speedway, constitute a well-established highway network extending in all four directions. CETDZ is 11 kilometers from Changsha Wharf along Xiangjiang River and 8 kilometers from downtown Changsha, Changsha Railway Station, and Changsha Huanghua International Airport.

Industrial Structure

Five major industries have come into shape in the zone, namely, the sophisticated machinery processing and manufacturing industry; electronics and information industry; building materials industry; food and beverage industry; printing industry.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Cultural Links
文化链接

长沙干菜

长沙人善于加工贮藏菜肴，普通家庭都会熏腊肉、卤蛋、做霉豆腐等。腊肉放在茶油或谷仓内可留至伏天，不霉不走味。至于小菜腌制方法更是五花八门，家家户户都有酸坛，泡豆角、黄瓜、萝卜等可随时食用，经济方便。经淘米水泡过的刀豆、芋头梗风味独特。青菜、白菜、排菜经不同方法腌制，可变成风味各异的擦菜和酸菜。如腌成盐菜，则芳香扑鼻，晒干后可长期保存。至于生姜、茄子、苦瓜、萝卜等晾晒腌制后，既是美味食品，又是馈赠佳品。如将刀豆、姜做成蝙蝠型，谐音“福”；制成喜鹊，象征“喜”；切成兰草形，寓意“男”，都是很受欢迎的工艺食品。

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

Mawangdui 马王堆	湖南师范大学
No 1 Normal School of Hunan Province 湖南省第一师范学校	Hunan College of Traditional Chinese Medicine 湖南中医学院
Yuelu Shuyuan 岳麓书院	Hunan Business College 湖南商学院
Central South University 中南大学	Dolton Hotel 通程国际大酒店
Hunan University 湖南大学	Grand Sun City Hotel 长沙神农大酒店
Changsha University of Science and Technology 长沙理工大学	Golden Source Hotel 金源大酒店
Hunan Agricultural University 湖南农业大学	Wing 咖啡之翼
Hunan Normal University	UBC 上岛咖啡
	Mingdian Cafe 名典咖啡

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Yu Lou Dong 玉楼东
Second Xiangya Hospital
中南大学湘雅二医院
Hunan Provincial People's Hospital
湖南省人民医院
Changsha Economic & Technological Development Zone
长沙经济技术开发区
Changsha High-Tech Industrial Development Zone
长沙高新技术产业开发区

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

7 华南地区
South China

Unit 1 广州 Guangzhou

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Guangzhou is divided by the Pearl River.
   珠江横穿广州市
2. Guangzhou is known was the Goat City.
   广州被称作“羊城”。
3. Guangzhou is also named the Flower City.
   广州又被称作“花城”。
4. The first Emperor Qin Shihuang set up the Prefecture of Nanhai in Guangdong.
   秦始皇曾在广东设立南海郡。
5. Guangzhou is the site of the China Export Commodities Fair.
   广州是中国出口商品交易会的举办地。
6. The Guangzhou Fair is held annally from April 15 to April 30, and October 15 to October 30.
   广交会每年4月15日至4月30日及10月15日至10月30日举行。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

7. Dr. Sun Yat-sen was born south of Guangzhou in Zhongshan County.
孙中山先生出在广州市南面的中山县。
8. However, despite the fact that the city is an international trade hub, there is a lack of signs in English.
但是，尽管这座城市是国际交流中心，却很少有英文标识。
9. The best time to visit Guangzhou is in October and November.
去广州最好的时节是十月和十一月。
10. Today, Guangzhou is recognized as one of China's most prosperous, liberal, and cosmopolitan cities.
如今，广州被公认为中国最繁荣、自由、开放的城市。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

B 城市简介 Brief Introduction

Guangzhou, the South Gate of China, is a prosperous metropolis full of vigor.

Guangzhou is the capital city of Guangdong, and the center of its political, economic, scientific, educational and cultural life. Sui (Ears of Rice) is short for Guangzhou and the City of Ram (Yang Cheng) is also an alias of Guangzhou. The kapok is the city flower and the kapok tree is the city tree of Guangzhou.

Guangzhou is located in the middle south of Guangdong Province, north of the Pearl River Delta. It lies close to the South China Sea, Hong Kong, and Macao. Zhujiang (The Pearl River), the third largest river of China, runs through Guangzhou and is navigable to the South China Sea. Situated in such an excellent geographical region, Guangzhou is called China's South Gate.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Covering an area of 7 434.4 square kilometers (2 870 square miles), Guangzhou is home to more than 11 million people, including a 3.7 million transitory population. With the opening of China to the outside world, a large number of people from other regions of China swarmed into Guangzhou, one of the first "open" cities in China. This has accelerated its economic development.

Paragraph 2

H历史 istory

Formerly known as Canton in the West, the city of Guangzhou has a history dating back around 2 500 years, and many of the inhabitants in the Chinatowns around the world can trace their ancestry back to this city.

Although the actual origins of the city are lost in the mists of time, the most popular legend tells of five celestial beings riding into the area that is now Guangzhou on five rams and carrying sheaves of rice. The celestials bestowed blessings on the land and offered the sheaves to the people of the city as a symbol of prosperity and abundance. After the celestials left, the rams turned into stone, and Guangzhou quickly developed into an affluent and influential city. Due to this legend, Guangzhou has gained several popular nicknames: Yangcheng (City of Rams), Suicheng (Sheaves of Rice City) and Wuyangcheng (City of Five Rams). In addition, due to the abundance of flowers along the city's main thoroughfares, Guangzhou is often referred to as Huacheng (City of Flowers).

According to historical records, the city was built in 214 BC and was known as Panyu (番禺). The name Guangzhou actually referred to the prefecture in which Panyu was located. However, as the city grew, the name Guangzhou was adopted for the city itself.

As a major sea port, Guangzhou's history is full of color. In 786 the city was sacked by the Persians, while in 1711 the British East India Company established a trading post there. In 1842 the Treaty of Nanjing was signed, which designated the city as one of the five ports that allowed business

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

transactions with foreign nations.

Guangzhou was also part of the so called "Maritime Silk Road" that linked southern China with India, South-East Asia, the Middle East, and Africa. As a result of the links with the Middle East, a mosque was established in the city in 627, and a small Muslim community continues to this day. Furthermore, because the sixth patriarch of Zen Buddhism was born in Guangzhou, taught the famous Platform Sutra there, and established a monastery to the north of the city, Guangzhou has maintained a strong connection with this school of Buddhism.

Paragraph 3

S购物街 Shopping Streets

Lying next to Hong Kong and Macao, Guangzhou is aware of its commercial development. The biannual Canton Fair adds to the commercial atmosphere. To tourists, Guangzhou is really a "Shoppers' Paradise".

If a friend comes to Guangzhou from afar, Cantonese will take him/her to walk around the Shangxia Jiu Lu and Teem Plaza area. Just like the Wangfujing in Beijing, the Town God's Temple (Chenghuang Miao) in Shanghai and the Confucius Temple in Nanjing, Shangxia Jiu Lu is the most influential traditional commercial street in Guangzhou.

Shangxia Jiu Lu Pedestrian Street is located in the Liwan District of Xiguan, a prosperous traditional commercial district. It is the first commercial pedestrian street in Guangzhou. Walking into this street, you will see the featured Qi Lou, an old building style that exists in Guangzhou and its neighboring areas, on both sides of the road. It reflects the strong Lingnan Culture. On this street lie more than 200 stores, especially those brand name restaurants and teahouses open here. From 1 p. m. to 9 p. m. on weekends and holidays and on every night, Shangxia Jiu Lu is restricted to pedestrians only.

Be sure to go to Shangxia Jiu Lu. Even if you don't buy anything, just walking along this street you will feel the cultural atmosphere in the street

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

with on both sides.

Paragraph 4

B 白云国际机场 aiyun International Airport

The New Guangzhou Baiyun International Airport is a major hub in Southern China, second only to Hong Kong. The airport is the base of China Southern Airlines and has not only an extensive range of domestic flights, but some international connections, including Air France to Paris, China Southern to Los Angeles, Thai Airways to Bangkok, Singapore Airlines to Singapore and Finnair to Helsinki. Other direct international destinations include Amsterdam, Kuala Lumpur, Jakarta and Osaka.

The airport is 28 km north from downtown Guangzhou, and should not be confused with the former Baiyun Airport which was closed in 2004. A metro line to the airport is under construction but won't be ready until around 2009. In the meantime, taxi is the fastest option. See the airport fare table for approximate fare cost.

Paragraph 5

S 治安良好 tay Safe

The city is generally very safe, but due to the enormous number of people from other mainland provinces flocking to Guangzhou in the hope of finding jobs (often unsuccessfully), the area around the main train station has gained a not undeserved reputation for being chaotic and less safe than other areas in the city. Pickpockets are especially active in that area, though this problem has also begun to spread to other parts of the city. Apart from this, and the occasional purse/bag snatching, the city feels a lot safer then most of the western cities.

With its vast population, there are always a number of people (often from out of town) who seem to be just hanging around in major Chinese cities. Those unaccustomed to this can feel intimidated, especially as many

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

of these people will stare at a Westerner. However, please remember that rural Chinese are not used to seeing a "Lao Wai" (a Westerner), so their stares are merely out of interest, and should not be taken as something rude or offensive. In this respect, it is important to be aware that 3 out 10 people in Guangzhou are migrants from other provinces. Furthermore, in China one should always keep personal belongings close at hand and be aware of fake touts. Use only official taxis and get advice from the government-run tourist office.

Traffic accidents are significantly higher than those of other countries. Use extra caution while crossing the streets; use pedestrian bridges and tunnels whenever possible. Due to high number of traffic accidents and crimes involving motorcycles, they will be totally banned in Guangzhou starting in 2007. Once the most important mode of transportation in China, bicycles will be also limited to certain roads in the city.

Paragraph 6

D 特色小吃 elicious Snacks

Shuang Pi Nai (Double-Skin Milk): Nanxin Shuang Pi Nai is the specialty of Nanxin Milk Store on the Xia Jiu Lu. Simmered milk has a frozen cover made of the mixture of egg white and milk, Hence the name Double-Skin Milk. When finished, this food appears to be pure white and semisolid. It tastes soft and sweet. And most importantly, it has much nutritional value, good for your health.

Jidi Zhou (Jidi Porridge): Jidi Zhou served in the Wuzhan Ji Restaurant is the most famous of all. It has been a noted snack bar since the early 1900s.

Liuhua Porridge City: inside the Liuhua Park, Liuhua Lu, Guangzhou

Yuntun Mian (Wonton Noodle): Go to Shangxia Jiu Lu, Xihua Lu and Renmin Lu. You will find many eateries that serve Wonton Noodles. Cantonese like to have the delicious Yuntun Mian for breakfast.

Chang Fen (Steamed Vermicelli Roll): This featured snack is popular

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

among local people. It is now a must-serve in nearly all teahouses and night markets.

Guiling Gao: Being afraid of suffering from excessive internal heat, Cantonese love to have Guiling Gao. That is a kind of brown jelly that holds the shape of the vessel. It is said the Guiling Gao can clear internal heat. The bitterer, the better.



广州市简介

广东市简称穗，别名羊城，位于珠江三角洲北部。广东省省会。是我国南方最大、最重要的城市，广东省政治、经济、文化和交通中心。

广州是我国历史文化名城之一，秦为海南郡治，汉末为交州治；三国吴为广州治。1925 年设市。自 1957 年起，每年两次的中国出口商品交易会在此举行。

广州属亚热带海洋季风气候。因背山面海，海洋性气候显著，具有温暖多雨、光热充足、温差较小，夏长冬短的特点。表现为四季田野常绿，花果常香，鱼虾常鲜。并享有“花城”之誉。木棉花开红似火，象征广州生气勃勃的革命精神，定为市花。

广州是我国南方重要的对外贸易和出口口岸。黄埔港可泊大型远洋轮，有航线通往我国沿海城市和世界各大洲。广州又是我国重要的侨乡。

广州轻工业发达，冶金、机械、造船、建材、化工等重工业也有较好基础。手工艺品以牙雕、玉雕、广彩、檀香扇等著名。广州商业、饮食业发达。广州烹调在世界上享有盛誉，餐馆遍及世界五大洲。广州山青水秀，风光旖旎，名胜古迹众多。主要有中山纪念堂、广州农民运动讲习所、广州起义烈士陵园、黄花岗七十二烈士墓、镇海楼、六榕寺、白云山、流花湖等。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

Dominating the Sea Tower 镇海楼
The Six Banyan Temple and the Flowery Pagoda 六榕寺和花塔
The Chen Clan Academy or Chen's Ancestral Hall 陈家祠
Dr Sun Yat-Sen Memorial Hall 中山纪念堂
The Former Site of the National Peasant Movement Institute 农民运动讲习所旧址
Yuexiu Park 越秀公园
Guangzhou Art Museum 广州艺术博物馆
Guangzhou Olympic Stadium 广州奥林匹克体育场
The Site of the Whampoa Military Academy 黄埔军校遗址
Tianlun International Hotel 天伦万怡大酒店
Guangzhou Dongfang Hotel 广州东方宾馆
China Hotel By Marriott 中国大酒店
Asia International Hotel 亚洲国际大酒店
Guangzhou Garden Hotel 广州花园酒店
White Swan Hotel 白天鹅宾馆
Guangzhou International Hotel 广东国际大酒店
Holiday Inn City Center, Guangzhou 文化假日酒店
Guangzhou Victory Hotel 广州胜利宾馆
Ramada Pearl Hotel 凯旋华美达大酒店
Riverside Hotel 江湾大酒店
Landmark Hotel 华厦大酒店
Central Hotel 中央海航酒店
Clarion Star Hotel 景星酒店
Parkview Square 广州越秀天安酒店

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 2 深圳 Shenzhen

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Shenzhen is the fastest economy-growing city in China.
   深圳是中国经济增长最快的城市。
2. Shenzhen has China's greatest concentration of skyscrapers.
   深圳有中国最密集的摩天大楼区。
3. Food is available at the theme park in Shenzhen.
   在深圳的主题公园里有食物供应。
4. Here you can see vivid replicas of the world's wonders, historical heritages and famous scenic sites.
   这里你可以看到形象逼真的世界奇观、历史遗迹和著名景点的复制品。
5. Within one day, you can visit many reproductions of famous sites from different countries.
   只需一天,你可以看到很多来自不同国家的著名景点。
6. It situated in the southern coastal area of Guangdong province; between north latitude 22°27′—22°52′, east longitude, 113°46′—114°37′.
   深圳位于广东省南部沿海地区;北纬 22°27′—22°52′,东经 113°46′—114°37′ 之间。
7. Shenzhen is 160 kilometers away from Guangzhou, 35 kilometers from Hongkong and Jiulong.
   深圳距广州 160 公里、距香港和九龙 35 公里。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

8. Skiing in a subtropical city might sound strange, but the Indoor Alpine Ski Run in Shenzhen Window of the World offers you four thousand square meters (about 6 200 012 square feet) of indoor piste to ski.
滑雪对于一个亚热带城市听起来似乎不可能,但深圳世界之窗的室内高山滑雪场能为您提供4 000平方米(约6 200 012平方尺)的室内滑雪场。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

B 城市简介 Brief Introduction

Location: situated in the southern coastal area of Guangdong province; between north latitude 22° 27′—22°52′, east longitude, 113°46′—114° 37′, 160 kilometers away from Guangzhou, 35 kilometers from Hongkong and Jiulong; Dapeng Gulf to the east, the influx of the Pearl River west, Hongkong south, Dongguan and Huizhou cities north

Neighboring Areas: Hunan, Jiangxi, Fujian, and Hainan provinces; Guangxi Zhuang Autonomous Region, Hong Kong and Macao

Physical Features: facing the sea and surrounded by mountains; higher in southeast, lower in northwest; mainly covered by hills with plains in its western area

Population: 13 million

Area: 1 952.84 sq km

Nationalities: Han, Hui, and Manchu

History: a history of 6 000 years; used to be a stationed place when Baiyue Tribe going to sea in ancient times; an important hub of water and land trade in Southern China; also a salt origin and famous for its perfume

Climatic Features: subtropical maritime climate; annual average sun-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

shine of 2 120 hours

Average Temperature: annual average temperature of 22.4 ℃; with the highest temperature of 36.6℃ and the lowest of 1.4℃.

Rainfall: annual average of 1948.6mm

Mountains: Wutong Hill, Yangtai Hill, Nanshan Hill

Rivers: Dasha River, Guanlan River, Pingdi River, Buji River; Xili Lake, Yinhu Lake, Xiangmi Lake

Local Highlights: Longgang Sanhuang Chicken, Nantou Lichee, Nanshan Peach, Shiyan Pear, Jingui Orange, Longhua Square Persimmon, dragon-dances, lion-dances and steed-dances

Paragraph 2

C发展中的城市 ity in Bloom

Shenzhen was awarded the first prize in the E category (for cities with a population of over 1 million) in the "Nations in Bloom" competition. Shenzhen was also listed as one of the 500 best cities by the Planning Commission of the United Nations.

Shenzhen passed the national examination for a "model green city" and "city in bloom."

The greenery area covers 45 percent of the urban area. Green areas cover 84.16 square kilometers. The per capita average green area measures 16 square meters. Parkland covers 990.05 square kilometers. Areas suffering from soil erosion cover less than 50 square kilometers. Natural reserves cover 170.3 square kilometers, 8.7 percent of the total coverage of Shenzhen.

There are altogether 218 parks around the city, of which 41 are located in the Shenzhen Special Economic Zone.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 3

工业结构
Industrial Structure

Shenzhen has basically formed new industrial structure, which takes hi-tech industry and manufacturing industry as the base and supported by modern tertiary industry.

In regional layout, Shenzhen is featuring in "soft industry in the south and hard industry in the north, and port and tourism industries in the west and east." Four districts within the Special Economic Zone including Nanshan, Futian, Luohu and Yantian take finance, logistics, hi-tech, software and trade as the pillar industries. Shenzhen plans new types of metropolitan industrial parks, vigorously encouraging companies' headquarters to locate there, as well as the convention and exhibition economy. Shenzhen requires areas in these districts to have the "three-high" characteristics, namely, high technology, high-end products and high added value.

In the northern Bao'an and Longgang districts, Shenzhen focuses on "hard" industries and has accelerated the development of the manufacturing industry. The two districts are introducing a group of large, basic industrial projects that involve the future of the city's economy and actively taking over manufacturing and processing industries transferred out of the Special Economic Zone. The areas in the east and west of the city are making use of their proximity to mountains and the sea to develop ports and tourism.

The high technology sector has become the premier driving force behind the local economy. The new and hi-tech output value soared from 320 billion Yuan in 2006, an increase of 28.8 percent over the previous year, accounting for 49.2 percent of the total industrial output. The progress in industrial structure adjustment is obvious. The strategies of appropriately and rationally developing heavy industry had been initiated and breakthroughs had been made in automobile, refined chemistry, equipment manufacturing and bio-medicine fields.

The development of information technology is prominent in the city with

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

a total output value increase by 30 percent, laying a solid foundation for economic growth.

Paragraph 4

私营经济 Private Economy

The private economy generated over 50 percent of total revenue. When Shenzhen was first established there were only six private enterprises with a total output of less than 30 000 Yuan.

Huawei, ZTE, Skyworth, BYD and Neptunus had taken the lead in the country in their corresponding fields. Some small and medium-sized enterprises with self-proprietary rights also claim their names at their own fields.

There were three enterprises with output over 10 billion Yuan, over 20 with more than 1 billion Yuan, more than 200 with more than 100 million Yuan. There were 16 private firms among the top 100 enterprises in the city. In 2006, private enterprises had an added value of 34.486 billion Yuan, 15.4 percent of GDP, more than 80 percent of the total wholesale and more than 90 percent of the food and drink industry. The industrial output of private enterprises was 30 percent of the total.

Of the private enterprises, Huawei and ZTE had an 80 percent market share of the program-controlled switchers in the country; BYD took the lead as the largest rechargeable batten producer in the country and the third in the world; and Kingdee listed is one of the most famous companies in financial software. Eighteen private enterprises had overseas branches, and sold goods in more than 40 countries and regions. About 30 percent of private enterprises conducted international business.

The total number of workers employed in private enterprises and individual businesses reached 3.69 million in 2006, 30 percent of the total employees in the city. Around 12 000 laid-off workers get re-employed at private enterprises.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 5

深港合作
Shenzhen-Hong Kong Cooperation

Eggs, fish, meat, vegetables, dairy products and other daily necessities in Hong Kong are mainly provided by Shenzhen. Every year, the Shenzhen Reservoir channels a total of 1.1 billion cubic meters of water from the East River to Hong Kong. The Daya Bay Nuclear Power Plant, located in eastern Shenzhen, transmits electricity to Hong Kong.

The cooperation between the two sides had be extended from processing with imported materials from Hong Kong to other sector including trade, shipment, transport, logistics and tourism.

The two sides jointed developed industrial, research and education base and introduced four Hong Kong universities to opened business at Shenzhen Virtual University Park.

The complementarities in resources and functions play an important role in the city's construction plan. The city made a good realignment of the construction of the border, transport and infrastructures between the two cities and environmental protection, while promoting cooperation in resources and regional distribution and urban construction.

Of the overseas investment in Shenzhen, 70 percent is from Hong Kong. Hong Kong-funded enterprises in Shenzhen totaled 80 percent of the overseas firms in the city.

After the initiation of the Closer Economic Partnership Arrangements, Shenzhen set its position as a regional finance center. Shenzhen's security and foreign currency markets provide a platform for Hong Kong international capital to enter into mainland's market and inland enterprises to attract international capital.

In the past eight years since the return of sovereignty of Hong Kong to China, especially after the implementation of CEPA, the trade between the two sides has doubled with an average annual growth of 20 percent. The import and export volume of general trade has reached US $5.53 billion,

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

increase by 12.3 percent. Processing business accounts 70 percent of the businesses of the two sides, and import and export of Shenzhen private enterprises to Hong Kong account 58.5 percent of the total Hi-tech products shared half of the total Shenzhen-Hong Kong trade volume, weighing at 42.5 percent.

The two sides extended fields of cooperation in 2004. Under the cooperation framework, government of two sides established coordination system over key projects. Ports and cross-border cooperation had been strengthened and cooperation in trade, science, education, finance and tourism had been greatly enhanced

Paragraph 6

B 布吉农业生态园
uji Agriculture Produce Market

Buji Agriculture Produce Market covers an area of 120 000 square meters with a construction area of 200 000 square meters. More than 3 000 enterprises from 30 provinces, municipalities and autonomous regions in China opened businesses here, engaging more than 3 000 produce varieties, whose sales of fruits, vegetables, oil and food stuff, and by-products account 90 percent, 85 percent, 50 percent and 30 percent of the residents' consumption respectively. Some products have been sold to South China, Hong Kong and Southeast Asia region.

There are 2 800 kilometers of roads and 200 kilometers of expressways with a density of 0.75 kilometers per square kilometer in Shenzhen. The road network, which is composed of expressways, trunk roads, main roads and viaduct roads, had shorted travel time inside and out side the economic zone to half an hour and Shenzhen to neighboring cities to an hour.

By the end of 2006, the city had a total of 18 991 public buses, 5 376 were regular ones, 3 310 were mini buses and 10 305 were taxis. There were 379 public transport routes that covered 10 100 kilometers, 3 452 kilometers more than the previous year. The public transport served 1 billion

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

passenger times in the year, increased by 4.8 percent.

Paragraph 7

港口运输 Port Transport

The city has 130 berths, of which 53 berths can accommodate vessels above 10 000 tons. The city now has 15-kilometers of port coastline and nine business port areas including Shekou and Yantian.

There are 33 shipping companies registered in the city with more than 190 vessels. Approximately 40 companies established 150 shipping lines. More than 560 ships berth in Shenzhen each month. Shipping lines ply from Shenzhen to North America, Europe, Australia, Japan and other countries.

2006 witnessed rapid progress in port transport. Shenzhen's ports handled a total of 135.3 million tons of goods, a 20.7 percent increase over the previous year. Container transport amounted to 136.5 million TEUs, a 28.2 percent increase over the previous year, making Shenzhen the 4th terminal port in the world. The total throughout output hit 8 million tons, a 37.9 percent increase over the previous year.

Shekou and Fuyong open ferries to Hong Kong. Total passenger turnover at Shenzhen Port reached 3.45 million.

Paragraph 8

高科技的研究与发展 High Tecnology Research and Development

The city has developed a research and development system with the market as its orientation, enterprises as its spearhead and domestic colleges, universities and research institutes as its backing. The hi-tech products output has increased by 46.5 percent year on year since 1992 and the patent application increased rapidly at the rate of 30 percent.

The research and development is characterized by the following: As many as 90 percent of the city's research and development institutions were owned by enterprises. Ninety percent of the city's researchers were compa-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

ny employees, more than 90 percent of the expenditure for research and development was covered by the private sector, and over 90 percent of the patents created in occupation came from enterprises. The number of firms involved in hi-tech product research and development is more than 30 000. In 2006, the output of hi-tech product with independent intellectual properties amounted to 185.2 billion Yuan, covering 57 percent of the city's total hi-tech product output.

More than 40 engineering technological centers have been built. Among the 700 research and development institutes, 90 percent were founded by enterprises.

The expenditure in technology was increased. In 2004, the three expenditures in technology research and development amounted to 700 million Yuan. The technological loan was 1.894 billion Yuan, 9.5 percent higher. 500 technological projects had been supported.

Paragraph 9

History of Shenzhen China 深圳的历史

Shenzhen was once a fishing village, formerly known as Bao'an County. It was picked by late Chinese leader Deng Xiaoping as the first of the "Special Economic Zone" of China. It was picked because of its close proximity to Hong Kong, and it was created as an experimental ground for capitalism in China. The special economic zone idea was a great success, and Shenzhen is now one of the largest cities in the Pearl River Delta region with a population of over 13 million (about 9 million are a mobile population, mainly farmers who gave up farming to become labourers).

The city became one of the largest manufacturing bases in the world. Shenzhen became a major manufacturing and export base of electrical appliances, garments, toys, jewellery, food, building materials, leather, and furniture in China.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Cultural Links
文化链接

深圳掌故

“深圳”这一地名于1410年(明永乐八年)始见史籍,于清朝初年建墟。当地的方言俗称田野间的水沟为”圳“或“涌”。深圳正因其水泽密布,村落边有一条深水沟而得名。

深圳又称鹏城。传说很久以前,有一只在空中翱翔的大鹏飞至南海边,被这里的秀丽风景所吸引,于是以此为家,后来,它昂扬的头变成了大鹏山(七娘山);它劲展的双翼西边成了大鹏湾,东边成了大亚湾;它翘竖的尾羽,化成了排牙山;它健美的身躯就成了今天的大鹏半岛……

何谓“鹏城”?

从深圳去大亚湾的途中,有一座城门,跟北京的德胜门相像,只是规模小,城墙经风雨侵蚀,破败不堪;砖墙上长着一层厚厚的青苔,叫不上名的树木扎根在砖头缝中,长得枝繁叶茂、郁郁葱葱。城楼虽不及山海关雄壮,仍古味十足。进入城门,只见青石板铺就的道路,两边平房都是砖木结构,鳞次栉比,露出房檐的椽子都已腐朽,看起来年代已相当久远。如果稍加修理,门前插上酒旗,挂上招牌,很像北宋开封的一条街,当地居民称这个地方叫王母,又叫大鹏,这座城就叫鹏城。

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

Longgang Sanhuang Chicken 龙岗三黄鸡	Sunshine Hotel 阳光酒店
Nantou Lichee 南头荔枝	Shenzhen Nanshan Hospital 深圳南山医院
Nanshan Peach 南山桃	Shenzhen Bantian Hospital 深圳坂田医院
Shiyan Pear 十堰梨	Songgang People's Hospital 深圳市宝安区松岗人民医院
Jingui Orange 金贵橙	Shenzhen Shatoujian Free Trade Zone 深圳沙头角保税区
dragon-dances 舞龙	
lion-dances 舞狮	
Shenzhen Futian Free Trade Zone 深圳福田保税区	

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 3 海口 Haikou

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Haikou is the capital of Hainan, wonderful in winter.
   海口是海南的省会,是个过冬的好去处。
2. Haikou, known also as the "Coconut City", is the capital of Hainan Province, China's second largest island.
   海口又称"椰子城",是海南省省会。海南岛是中国的第二大岛。
3. The city is the provincial administrative center of Hainan as well being the focus of the local economy, culture and transportation.
   该市是海南省行政中心及当地经济文化与运输的中心。
4. With the sea on three sides Haikou enjoys a long coastline that features excellent bathing beaches and sea side resorts.
   因为三面环山,海口有很长的海岸线,成为海边洗浴和休闲盛地。
5. Holiday Beach is the most popular of these.
   假日海滩是最受欢迎的。
6. Here there are modern and convenient public transport facilities.
   这里有便捷的公共交通设施和现代化的设施。
7. Besides its natural resources, Haikou has a number of important sites of historical interest.
   除了自然资源,海口有很多重要历史价值的名胜。
8. Haikou has evolved from a simple sightseeing city to an attractive seaside resort and business center.
   海口市已经从一个普通的观光城市变为滨海观光胜地和商业中心。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

B简介 rief Introduction

Haikou, known also as the "Coconut City", is the capital of Hainan Province, China's second largest island. The city is the provincial administrative center of Hainan as well being the focus of the local economy, culture and transportation. Haikou stands at the northern end of Hainan Island, on the west bank of the Nandu River estuary. This river is the longest on the island and the city's name appropriately means "Mouth of the Sea".

With the sea on three sides Haikou enjoys a long coastline that features excellent bathing beaches and sea side resorts. Holiday Beach is the most popular of these, while Xixiu Beach is where the National sailing and windsurfing teams train and hold competitions.

The downtown area of the city has an excellent environment with streets lined with coconut palms. Here there are modern and convenient public transport facilities and all that is best in a tropical seaside city that is pollution free and that meets the needs of the tourist in a friendly and welcoming way.

Besides its natural resources, Haikou has a number of important sites of historical interest. The Wugong Temple (The Five Official's Temple), the Tomb of Hai Rui and the Xiuying Emplacement each serve as reminders of the historical importance of Haikou.

Paragraph 2

C气候 limate

Haikou, the provincial capital has a tropical marine climate with an average annual temperature of 20℃ (68℉). Its spring is warm with almost

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

drought conditions but the high summer temperatures bring heavy rain in their wake. Autumn is a season of typhoons and rain storms. It can feel quite cold in winter by contrast. As a rule, the best time to travel is between November and the following April. From May to October Haikou has its rainy seasons, with the precipitation reaching a peak during September. As high temperatures warm the waters of the South China Sea from June to September tropical storms (hurricanes), known here as typhoons, are driven toward the coast and Haikou can experience force 8 storms that cause considerable problems for traffic.

Paragraph 3

Seafood 海鲜

When visiting Haikou, you will find some fine seafood restaurants that are a must as well as the famous local specialties of Wenchang Chicken, Jiaji Duck and Dongshan Mutton. Hainan mutton is prepared in a special way and so does not have the attributes that are often associated with mutton that make it less than appetizing to many people. Here is not only smells good but tastes good and comes highly recommended!

Seafood restaurants in Haikou fall into two categories. One is the upmarket variety where the decor and service is as much of the dining experience as the quality of the food. Such places are the Jinghao Restaurant on Binhai Avenue and Nanzhuang Restaurant on Haixiu Avenue. These extra touches come at a price, so eating in these venues is rather more expensive. The alternative is the one on the roadside where you will see the seafood alive and kicking in the tank! This kind of restaurant is much more reasonably priced especially if it is merely your hunger you wish to satisfy. Popular venues in this category include those on Haixiu Middle Road and on Xinbu Island.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 4

C椰子节 ocount Festival

This takes place during late March or early April. Hainan Island is known as the "Coconut Island" and the unique Hainan International Coconut Festival is held in Haikou each year. The largest and most influential local festival of Hainan, it attracts tourists all over the world. The festival is designed to enhance local commerce and features tourism, culture, folk customs, sports and economic issues and trade. The coconut culture and folk customs of the Li and Miao minorities make a special contribution to the celebrations.

Paragraph 5

M少数民族 inority Groups

As well as the Han people, there are a number of minority groups living in the province. The Li Ethnic Minority Group is the native group of Hainan. With a population of over 1.3 million, they inhabit the Mt. Wuzhishan and southwestern areas of the Island. The Li Minority has a close cultural relationship with Zhuang and Buyi minorities. Their most famous product, Li Brocade, has been greatly admired since the Tang Dynasty (618-907).

Paragraph 6

H海口旅游交通 aikou Travel Transportation

Haikou Meilan Airport, 25 km (16 miles) away from the center of Haikou, provides a convenient connection between Haikou and other cities at home and abroad. It has more than 200 air lines flying between major cities inside China such as Beijing, Shanghai, Shenzhen, Guangzhou, Shijiazhuang, Wuhan, Dalian, Xiamen, Xian, Chengdu, Harbin, Qingdao and Nanjing, etc., as well as direct flights to Hong Kong, Bangkok, Singapore,

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Kuala Lumpur and so forth.

Haikou Meilan Airport (HMA) is 30 minutes ride from downtown by bus. A shuttle bus operates between the airport and downtown Haikou. It begins at 5: 30 each morning and runs until the last flight of the day. The bus fare is RMB 15 per person. China Southern Airlines and Hainan Airlines provide a free bus to the airport. The former starts at the gate of Civil Aviation Hotel on Haixiu Road while the latter starts at the building of the old airport. If you take a taxi to the airport, the fare is about RMB 30—40 after a bargain with the driver.

A rail passenger service was established on December 5, 2004 that runs between Haikou and Guangzhou. The train travels on the boat and is the first Chinese rail connection that spans the sea. The crossing takes approximately 55 minutes. The entire one way journey takes about 12 hours. Tickets price vary from RMB 138 to RMB 400.

You can buy railway tickets at Haikou New Port (Xin Gang) Ticket Office (transferring at Guangzhou) and at Xiuying Port Ticket Office (transferring at Zhanjiang).

Paragraph 7

B 经济发展 Business Development

Since its establishment as a Special Economic Region in 1988, Hainan Province has accelerated its programmes to attract and retain domestic and foreign investment. As the province's capital city and political, business and financial centre, Haikou has developed the infrastructure needed to help enterprises of every size establish and maintain a business presence in Hainan. This includes ample modern office space and access to government offices and legal and financial services.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Cultural Links
文化链接

海南黎族风俗习惯

黎族的住房有船形屋和金字形屋两种。船形房是传统的竹木结构建筑，外形像船篷，半圆柱状，用竹木扎架，上面盖着茅草。金字形房以树干作支架，竹片编墙，再糊一层泥。黎族人主食是大米，传统的竹筒饭异香扑鼻。男女都爱喝糯米酒，常常是几个人围酒坛而坐，用一根细竹管插入坛内，轮流吸酒，也有用碗盛酒喝的。

黎族的服饰也非常有特色：妇女穿着对襟的长袖上衣，下着筒裙，有的穿套头式上衣，头发束在脑后，插着骨簪等装饰品，戴着绿花头巾；男子以红布或黑布缠头，穿无领的对襟上衣，下穿前后两幅布的“吊襜”。

黎族的婚俗是：青年男女恋爱自由；寡妇有改嫁的自由。

黎人去世，他们实行丧葬是土葬，丧葬仪式各地不同，对墓地的选择比较重视。

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

Five Officials Memorial Temple 五公祠	longan 龙眼
butterfly museum 蝴蝶博物馆	lichee 荔枝
Su Temple 苏公祠	loquat 枇杷
Hai Rui Tomb 海瑞墓	naseberry 人参果
mangos 芒果	passion fruit 百香果
pineapples 凤梨	Crowne Plaza Resort Hainan 海南皇冠滨海温泉度假村
jackfruits 波罗蜜果	Hainan Mandarin Hotel 海南文华大酒店
coconuts 椰子	Fengge Cafe 风格咖啡店
carambola 杨桃	Henry Beef Restuarnat 亨利肥牛酒店
betelnuts 槟榔	
pawpaw 木瓜	

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Yawen Russian Restaurant 亚雯俄罗斯斯西餐厅	New Longquan Sea Food Restaurant 新龙泉海鲜酒家
Jingfu Palace Korean Restaurant 名人泰国鱼翅餐厅	Hot Bar 热点酒吧 Football Bar 快乐足球酒吧
Bologna Italian Restaurant 波洛尼亚意大利餐厅	Village Bar 乡村吧 Xiuying Hospital 秀英医院

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 4 香港 Hong Kong

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Hong Kong only has are area of 1 095 square kilometers.
   香港仅有 1 095 平方公里。
2. Hong Kong has three areas: Hong Kong Island, Kowloon, and New Territories.
   香港可以划为三部分:香港岛、九龙和新界。
3. Hong Kong adopted bauhinia as its emblem.
   香港以紫荆花为象征。
4. Both English and Chinese are both official languages in Hong Kong.
   英语和汉语都是香港的官方语言。
5. Hong Kong is a shopping paradise, dietary world, leisure summer resort, and culture window.
   香港是购物天堂、饮食世界、休闲胜地和文化之窗。
6. Today Hong Kong's population is 7.0 million.
   如今香港人口为 700 万。
7. China resumed the sovereignty over Hong Kong at zero o'clock, July 1, 1997.
   中国从 1997 年 7 月 1 日零时起对香港恢复行使主权。
8. Hong Kong possesses the highest bronze statue of Buddha in the open air in the world.
   香港有世界上最高的露天铜佛。
9. In the Global Financial market, Hong Kong is No. 3 after New York and London.
   在全球金融市场,香港排在纽约和伦敦之后,雄居第三。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号:铅笔钥匙

10. Hong Kong is one of the four major gold markets in the world along with London, New York and Zurich.
香港与伦敦、纽约和苏黎世共称世界四大黄金市场。
11. The Chinese mainland is the biggest market for Hong Kong's imports and exports.
中国大陆是香港最大的进口和出口市场。
12. Hong Kong maintains one of the highest economic growth rates in the world.
香港是世界上经济增长速度最快的地区之一。
13. The Chinese mainland is also the largest market for Hong Kong's entrepot trade.
中国大陆也是香港最大的转口贸易市场。
14. Tourism has been a pillar of Hong Kong's economy for decades.
数十年来，旅游业一直是香港经济的支柱。

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

B 简介 rief Introduction

Hong Kong SAR (Special Administrative Region) functions as a major regional and international financial and commercial center and an important gateway for trade into and from Mainland China. It is located to the south of the Chinese mainland bordered by Guangdong province and the South China sea.

Hong Kong occupies a relatively small area of 1 098 square kilometers compared to its population of around 7.0 million, giving it one of the world's highest population densities. The territory consists of Hong Kong Island, the Kowloon Peninsula, the New Territories, and 235 other islands. The region's climate is sub-tropical tending to be temperate for nearly half

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

the year. Tropical cyclones often affect Hong Kong with, on average, six hitting its shores annually.

Paragraph 2

History 历史

Hong Kong's political borders were established by a string of treaties between China and Great Britain. Hong Kong Island was originally ceded by China in 1841 in the treaty of Nanking. In 1860, the Kowloon Peninsula-was added by the Treaty of Peking. Finally, in 1898 Great Britain obtained a 99 year lease on the New Territories. An agreement signed by China and Great Britain in 1984 changed this, handing the region over to China from July 1, 1997, ending 150 years of Bedtish rule. Hong Kong became the Hong Kong SAR of China.

The hand-over was based upon a commitment from China to implement a political arrangement known as "One country, Two systems" under which Beijing promised to give Hong Kong a high degree of autonomy in allmatters except foreign and defense affairs for 50 years.

Paragraph 3

Islands District 岛内区域

Among the 18 administrative districts in the territory, the Islands District has the largest area but it is the least populated. The district consists of some twenty large and small islands lying to the south and southwest of Hong Kong. Much of these outlying islands' natural landscape and scenery has remained largely unaffected by urbanization. The scenic variety within its borders enables the Islands District to be described as one of the most picturesque "countryside" districts in Hong Kong.

Most of the coastal areas across the district (such as Cheung Chau, Tai O and Po Toi) used to be fishermen's enclaves. Though some of them have developed into dormitory towns, fishing and its related ancillaries,

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

such as boatyards, fish-farms, net-making, shrimp paste manufacture and fish-curing are still important lines of business in those areas.

Given its predominant rural character, the district provides a wealth of Chinese traditions and festivals that give colors to the local communities and insight into old Chinese customs.

Paragraph 4

T旅游业
ourism

Tourism is one of the fastest growing sectors in Hong Kong. Just in the last year, tourist arrivals have trebled, with the majority made up by Mainland visitors, a trend which is expected to continue. The government is supporting a series of major new tourist attractions, of which the biggest is Disneyland Hong Kong. Disneyland Hong Kong will be the fifth Disneyland in the world, recreating many of the designs of the original Disneyland in California. Disneyland Hong Kong is scheduled to open in September 2005. The project is estimated to create 18 000 new jobs at opening, with a phase of build-out allowing for 10 million annual visitors. The theme park will be located on Lantau Island just 10 minutes from the airport.

Paragraph 5

F经济地位
inancial Position

Hong Kong is the second largest international financial center in the Asia Pacific after Tokyo and probably the 8th largest in the world. It is also the second largest source of foreign direct investment in Asia. The Hong Kong stock market now has 1 043 companies listed, including 191 companies on the growth enterprise market (GEM), with a total market capitalization of US $ 791 billion at the beginning of 2004. Hong Kong is also the second largest venture capital center in Asia, managing 31% of the region's total capital pool. The largest state enterprises from Mainland China and many private enterprises have come to list on the Hong Kong Stock Ex-

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

change or to raise capital through other means. Over 100 mainland-backed and stateowned enterprises are listed on the main and second boards of the Hong Kong is the Exchange. Consequently, Hong Kong is the largest source of overseas direct investment in the Chinese mainland. By the end of 2003, among the 465 277 overseas-funded projects registered in the Chinese Mainland, 224 509 (48.3%) were linked to Hong Kong interests.

Business set-up and visa processes are relatively straight-forward in Hong Kong. It is beneficial to set up a business in Hong Kong when dealing with Mainland China to access Hong Kong's strong competency base and services in dealing with Mainland China and tax rates that are among the lowest and most straightforward in the world. Importantly, no tax is paid by firms on foreign-sourced income of any kind. Registering a business is also a simple, straightforward procedure accessible to all foreigners.

Paragraph 6

T2006 年香港购物节
he 2006 Hong Kong Shopping Festival

The 2006 Hong Kong Shopping Festival, which concluded on 31 August, provided visitors with an unprecedented opportunity to discover Hong Kong as a shopper's paradise and one of the most popular Asian destinations.

The 2006 Hong Kong Shopping Festival Lucky Draw was held on 7 September. You can view a list of the winners of the Grand Prize, 7 Super Prizes and 105 Lucky Prizes by clicking here.

The Shopping Festival also featured a wonderful anchor event called Aqua Fantasia, located next to the Clock Tower in Tsim Sha Tsui. Aqua Fantasia was a multimedia extravaganza featuring stirring music and colourful images on a transforming water curtain created using the cutting edge technology of Aqua Graphic Vision, as pioneered in Asia.

Shoppers indulged themselves in a diverse shopping experience like no other enjoying fantastic sales and special shopping and dining promotions during the summer months. Shoppers could give themselves a real retail

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

workout, choosing from a galaxy of stores to satisfy their shopping desires. Besides shopping at Hong Kong's participating malls and department stores, there were bargains galore to be found at hip and trendy boutiques, in the street markets, along the distinctive shopping streets, at top-brand flagship stores and in specialty store clusters.

Paragraph 7

D家庭娱乐世界
iscover a World of Fun for Families

Let 2006 Discover Hong Kong Year be your cue to experience a fun-filled holiday in Hong Kong. Now there's even more for families to enjoy!

Don't miss the unique Hong Kong Disneyland, where Mickey Mouse and friends are ready to welcome you to their magical world. Hong Kong Wetland Park brings nature alive with fun interactive exhibits. The family will also love Hong Kong's newest attraction Ngong Ping 360 with its thrilling cable car ride which ends at a fascinating cultural village near the awesome Giant Buddha.

For extra fun, plan your visit to coincide with one of our five great Mega Events. The first one in 2006 welcomes the Year of the Dog with the spectacular Cathay Pacific International Chinese New Year Night Parade on 29 January. Then there's the Culture & Heritage Celebration in late April and early May, when you can enjoy the exotic Cheung Chau Bun Festival and rituals of Buddha's Birthday.

And if you're looking for bargains, take advantage of the Hong Kong Shopping Festival and summer sales, when you could also win fabulous prizes in a super Lucky Draw.

The Mid-Autumn Lantern Celebration in October culminates in an evening filled with happy families bearing colourful lanterns. Last but not least is the Hong Kong Winter Fest, which turns Hong Kong into a festive wonderland for families, featuring special events and unrivalled illuminations and decorations—plus super winter sales for mum!

Whenever you decide to come, the family will always have fun. There

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

are loads of must-see sights, educational and entertaining museums, and stunning mountains, beaches and outlying islands to explore. You'll also find Hong Kong a shopping paradise with plenty of family-friendly restaurants offering every type of food imaginable.



香港过年风俗

在新年前夕，家家户户为过年而忙碌起来：清扫房屋、除旧布新、采办年货等。在除夕（年三十晚），是一家人团圆的日子，家家户户在一起吃团圆饭。团圆饭的菜式通常都十分丰富，鸡鸭鱼肉，鲜腊荤素，应有尽有。而且多数菜名都含有吉利的意思。吃过团圆饭后，人们通常会到年宵市场去逛花市，买些年花回家，平添了不少过年气氛。此外，不少父母都会分压岁钱给自己的子女，勉励他们好好做人，努力读书和工作。

大年初一，人们开始正式庆祝新年，他们开始贴春联（挥春）、年画，舞龙，舞狮等，还会走亲友拜年。此外，还有不少过年食品，如：年糕、还有炸成金黄色的油角，煎堆，蛋散等。

过新年有许多的禁忌和习惯：

初一：鸡日-旧时在元旦贴画鸡辟邪祈福（因鸡谐音吉（ji））；

初二：狗日-出外拜年或祭祖；

初三：羊日-“赤口”，易生口角，不宜拜年。

初四：猪日-祭财神，老板想将某人“炒鱿鱼”，就不请他来拜神；

初五：牛日-破五，可打破诸多禁忌，五路财神生日，有“接财神”的习俗；

初六：马日-“送神”的日子，把除夕送来的财神纸马烧掉，店铺开始开张；

初七：人日-人的生日，又是聚餐吃喝，放花炮，起烟火的习俗，是“火的生日”。

初八：谷日-诸星下界，因此要祭星，寺庙往往在这天设坛祭星，接受布施；

初九：天爷生日-玉皇大帝诞辰，举行盛大的祭天活动；

初十：石头生日-凡是磨、碓、碾等石制用具都忌动用，烧香祭拜石具。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

Hong Kong Convention and Exhibition Centre 香港会展中心
Wan Chai 湾仔
Victoria Peak 太平山顶
Causeway Bay and Happy Valley 铜锣湾/跑马地
Stanley 赤柱
Repulse Bay 浅水湾
Ocean Park/Middle Kingdom/Water World 海洋公园/集古村/水上乐园
Tsing Ma Bridge/Lantau Link Visitors'Centre and Viewing Platform 青马大桥/铁青屿干线访客中心及观景台
Outlying Islands 外(离)岛
Hong Kong Disneyland 香港迪斯尼乐园
Grand Hyatt Hong Kong 香港凯悦酒店
Grand Stanford Hotel 海景嘉福酒店
Hotel Intercontinental 香港洲际酒店
Hotel Miramar 美丽华酒店
Hyatt Regency 凯悦酒店
Island Shangri-La Hong Kong 港岛香格里拉大酒店
Kowloon Shangri-la Hong Kong 九龙香格里拉大酒店
New World Renaissance Hong Kong 新世界方丽酒店

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 5 澳门 Macao

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Macao is called as"an oriental gem".
   澳门被称作"东方宝石"。
2. Macao is called the Las Vegas or Monte Carlo of the east.
   澳门被称作东方的拉斯维加斯或者蒙特卡洛。
3. Portuguese and Chinese are the two official languages in Macao.
   葡萄牙语和汉语是澳门的两种官方语言。
4. Macaonese cuisine is Portuguese with Indian, Malay, African and South American influences.
   澳门菜肴是葡萄牙风味的,但受印度菜、马来菜、非洲菜和南美洲菜的影响很深。
5. The Macao Basic Law guarantees Macao's entertainment industry with not change after 1999.
   《澳门基本法》保证了澳门的娱乐业在 1999 年以后不会改变。
6. The Sino-Portuguese Joint Declaration was signed in 1987.
   《中葡联合声明》于 1984 年签署。
7. Ruins of St. Paulo's Church is Macao's most famous landmark.
   圣·保罗教堂遗址是最著名的地面标志物。
8. A-Ma Temple is the oldest and most famous in Macao.
   妈阁庙是澳门最古老最著名的建筑物。
9. The SAR government proposed opening of the gambling market a few years ago.
   特区政府几年前提出开放赌博业市场开放赌博。
10. In 1937 the franchised system for gambling was introduced.
    1937 年推出了赌博专营制度。

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

B 澳门概况 rief Introduction

Macao, a tiny former Portuguese colony to the west of Hong Kong, is well known as a gambling and purism center. The territory has very close links with Hong Kong due to a reliance on the lrger of the two for trade and infrastructure and for historical reasons shares many political, social and economic elements.

Macao is located on the western edge of the Pearl River delta. It borders Zhuhai city in Guangdong province. It has a population of just 480 000 and a total area of just more than 27 square km. It consists of the Macao Peninsula, Taipa Island and Coloane Island, all connected by bridges and causeways.

Occupied by the Portuguese in the 16th century, Macao was the first permanent European settlement in East Asia. Pursuant to an agreement signed by China and Portugal in 1987, the territory became the Macao Special Administrative Region (SAR) of China on December 20, 1999. In a similar agreement to that made with Hong Kong, Macao is assured of "a high degree of autonomy" in internal matters for 50 years.

Paragraph 2

H 历史 istory

China has started exercising diplomacy in Macao after a lapse of 443 years. The Commission of the Ministry of Foreign Affairs in the Macao Special Administrative Region opened on December 20, 1999, hours after the Chinese flag was raised at in the garden of the newly built commission building. The building is across from the Forum, where the government of

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

the Macao Special Administrative Region was inaugurated on December 20, 1999. The opening of the commission is an important system of China's resumption of the exercise of sovereignty over Macao. Portugal's control over Macao for 443 years ended on December 20, 1999, Chinese garrison troops entered Macao at noon. The commission represents the Foreign Affairs Ministry in matter related to the central government. It is also the agency that processes applications from foreign countries and international organizations that would like to establish consulates or representative offices in Macao. Under the Basic Law of the Macao Special Administrative Region, the territory's government has the authority to handle some of its external affairs.

Paragraph 3

E 经济 conomy

Macao's textile and apparel industry has remained relatively competitive against the liberalizing China, protected by advantageously cheap Multi-Fibre Agreement textile quotas. The end of these quotas arrived at the beginning of 2004 and signals increasing migration of activities to the mainland and decline of the industry. Macao's transport infrastructure for trade and tourism is an important constraint on its economy. Most tourists arrive by sea since there is no direct land linkage from Hong Kong, although many Mainland Zhuhai tourists travel by land to Macao. Air transport via Macao Airport is not successful due to high costs. Consequently, plans to create the Hong Kong-Zhuhai-Macao bridge in the next will provide an important alternative access to Macao to stimulate its economy. In terms on trade and logistics Macao has been losing competitiveness for quite some time due to infrastructure insufficiencies. Despite its history as a successful port it lacks the deep-water ports and air cargo infrastructure necessary to meet modern commodity trading centre needs today.

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Paragraph 4

与欧盟的合作
Macao's Co-operation Relation with EU

The history of trade relations between Macao and Europe shows that the relationship has been changing in status, as is the overall East West relations. Since mainland China launched it's open-door policy, Macao has acted in an intermediary role as a strategic partner between China and the European Union (EU), due to the strong links between China and Portugal, the importing incentive offered to Macao and its increasing economic capability.

Since 1992, given the attraction of the fast growing Chinese economy, the EU has started to move towards China, to seek and establish entrances into China. Therefore, the EU and Macao signed the protocol of is Trade and Co-operation Agreement". This agreement mainly consists of the following: a steering committee was set up, to allow for co-operation of industrialisation, investment, energy, science and technology, communication and training. The committee has been working on these areas since 1993.

EUREKA meets Asia, a big event that is organised every two years in Macao, to foster co-operation and communication via computer network between scientific technological units and academic institutions. In the year 2000, there were 1 050 representatives that participated in EUREKA meets Asia 2000 and more than 5 000 visitors attended. The result could be described as fruitful because of the following figures: 312 co-operation discussions, eight large seminars, 91 contracts of intent and 29 protocols were signed.

Paragraph 5

澳门赌博业
The Development of Macao's Gambling

Macao's unique industries are tourism, gambling and the lottery,

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

which are closely interdependent and of world-wide repute. They have become indispensable foundations of Macao's economy. The Macao-Portuguese government has formulated a series of laws to standardize tourism, gambling and lottery activities in a bid to promote their development. These laws involve administrative systems for hotels, the catering industry and travel agencies, as well as protection of tourism resources.

Gambling is the core of the recreational sector. The gambling and lottery industry are currently controlled by a monopoly system. The Macao government grants permission in the form of concession contracts to monopolize the industry. The concessionaire has to pay special taxes to the government, bear related obligations and accept supervision. The Gambling and Games of Fortune Supervision and Co-ordination Bureau is in charge of supervising gambling and games of fortune activities. The government has worked out regulations to ban other gambling. The Governor of Macao has decision-making power on gambling and games of fortune activities, including conditions for approval, extension, suspension and revoking of the contract, and punishment of concessionaires in violation of the contracts.

The law contains provisions on business venues, time and methods of recreational activities organized by night clubs, bath houses and karaoke halls.

Cultural Links
文化链接

澳门的名字："MACAO"的由来

澳门被称为"MACAO"，这不是它本来的名字。早在数十年前，诗人闻一多就他的名作《七子之歌》中满怀悲愤与深情地替澳门作了不平之鸣。这个烙着屈辱的名字与葡萄牙人的入侵有着不可分割的联系。四百多年前，葡萄牙人首次进入澳门时，向当地居民询问这个地方的名字，当地土人以为他们问的是妈祖庙，于是回答"A－MA－GE"，从此，葡萄牙人即把澳门称作"MACAO"。这个名字一用就是数百年。澳门的别名甚多，如香山澳、

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

濠江、镜湖、海镜、妈阁、澳门街、梳打埠等。这么多的名称大多与澳门的地理有关。从凼仔岛眺看澳门半岛，她的左右各有一座山，远远望去像是两扇开启的“门”，半岛周围环绕着海水，人称此种地形为“澳”。那么，连在一起，这方土地便称为“澳门”。澳门半岛貌如一只长形小瓜，伸向西南，妈阁为其尖端，旧时文人以“莲花”、“莲茎”来形容它，故昔日的澳门又有“莲山”、“莲岛”之称。过去，澳门北湾、南湾、西湾环抱海湾，如半边圆镜，故别名中又多见“镜”字。而今日，这优美的旧时风光已成追忆。

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

Ruins of St. Paul's 大三巴牌坊	Mandarin Oriental 文华东方酒店
Macao Tower 澳门塔	Pousada de Sao Tiago 圣地亚哥酒店
Monte Fort 大炮台	Holiday Inn 假日酒店
Lou Lim Leok Gardens 卢廉若公园	Hotel Grandeur 京澳酒店
Beaches 沙滩	Beverly Plaza Hotle 富豪酒店
Ruins of St. Paulo Church	Pousada de Mong-ha 望厦宾馆
圣·保罗教堂遗址	Emperor Hotel 豪国酒店
A-Ma Temple 妈阁庙	Metropole Hotel 京都酒店
Hyatt Regency Hotel 凯悦酒店	Kingsway Hotel 金域酒店
New Century Hotel Macao	Sintra Hotel 森丽华酒店
新世纪大酒店	The Macao Basic Law
The Landmark Hotel 重地广场酒店	《澳门基本法》
Westin Resort 卫斯汀酒店	The sino-Protuguese Joint Declaration
Lisboa Hotel 葡京酒店	《中葡联合声明》

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

[General Information]
书名=魅力城市
作者=浩瀚　李生禄主编
页数=303
SS号=11921776
DX号=000006323433
出版日期=2008年02月第1版
出版社=科学技术文献出版社

教育资源　www.222b.com　公众号：铅笔钥匙

封面
书名
版权
前言
Chapter 1 North China 华北地区Unit 1 Beijing 北京
Unit 2 Tianjin 天津
Unit 3 Shijiazhuang 石家庄
Unit 4 Huhhot 呼和浩特
Unit 5 Taiyuan 太原
Chapter 2 East China 华东地区Unit 1 Jinan 济南
Unit 2 Nanjing 南京
Unit 3 Suzhou 苏州
Unit 4 Shanghai 上海
Unit 5 Nanchang 南昌
Unit 6 Fuzhou 福州
Unit 7 Xiamen 厦门
Chapter 3 Northeast China 东北地区Unit 1 Harbin 哈尔滨
Unit 2 Changchun 长春
Unit 3 Shenyang 沈阳
Unit 4 Dalian 大连
Chapter 4 Northwest China 西北地区Unit 1 Urumqi 乌鲁木齐
Unit 2 Lanzhou 兰州
Unit 3 Xining 西宁
Unit 4 Yinchuan 银川
Unit 5 Xi'an 西安
Chapter 5 Southwest China 西南地区Unit 1 Lhasa 拉萨
Unit 2 Kunming 昆明

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙

Unit 3 Dali 大理
Unit 4 Guiyang 贵阳
Unit 5 Chongqing 重庆
Unit 6 Chengdu 成都
Chapter 6 Central China 华中地区Unit 1 Zhengzhou 郑州
Unit 2 Wuhan 武汉
Unit 3 Changsha 长沙
Chapter 7 South China 华南地区Unit 1 Guangzhou 广州
Unit 2 Shenzhen 深圳
Unit 3 Haikou 海口
Unit 4 Hong Kong 香港
Unit 5 Macao 澳门

教育资源 www.222b.com 公众号：铅笔钥匙



公众号：铅笔钥匙（qianbiyaoshi）

微信扫描二维码，关注我们公众号

优质教育资源每日免费分享

欢迎关注我们

本资源来源于网络收集整理，版权归原作者所有
本资源为电子载体，分享仅限于家庭使用或交流心得
不得以任何理由用于商业用途，因此而造成的不良后果请自行承担！